

Xenophon's Anabasis IV

Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and
Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book IV
Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

© 2018 by Geoffrey Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work freely under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

The Greek text for the *Anabasis* Book IV is taken from the Greek edition by E. C. Marchant published by Oxford University Press in 1904.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9913860-2-4

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman, GFS Porson, New Athena Unicode

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

Table of Contents

	pages
Preface to the Series.....	v-vi
Running Core Vocabulary (8 or more times)	viii-xi
Abbreviations.....	xiv
 Greek Text and Commentary.....	 1-109
Greek-Only Text (For Classroom Use).....	110-149
 Nouns, Pronouns, Correlatives.....	 152-153
Synopses (regular and -μι verbs)	154-158
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (8 or more times)	159-162

Preface to the Series

The aim of this commentary is to make Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book IV as accessible as possible to intermediate-level Greek readers so that they may experience the joy, insight, and lasting influence that comes from reading some of the greatest works in classical antiquity in the original Greek.

Each page of the commentary includes 9-10 lines of Greek text, exactly one-third of a page from E. C. Marchant's 1904 Oxford Classical Text, with all corresponding vocabulary and grammar notes arranged below. The vocabulary includes all words occurring seven or fewer times, organized alphabetically, while the grammatical notes are arranged according to line numbers. The advantage of this format is that it allows me to include as much information as possible on a single page and yet insure that the numerous commentary entries are distinct and readily accessible to readers.

To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a list of words occurring 8 or more times at the beginning of this book and recommend that readers review this list before they read each section. An alphabetized form of the core list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Greek text and commentary and not need to turn a page or consult dictionaries as they read.

The grammatical notes are designed to help beginning readers read the text, and so I have passed over detailed literary and philosophical explanations in favor of short and concise entries that focus exclusively on grammar and morphology. The notes are intended to complement, not replace, an advanced-level commentary, and so I recommend that readers consult an advanced-level commentary after each reading from this book. Assuming that readers finish elementary Greek with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to subjunctive and optative constructions, identify unusual aorist and perfect forms, and in general explain aspects of the Greek that they should have encountered in first year study but perhaps forgotten. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance rather than too little.

Better Vocabulary-Building Strategies

One of the virtues of this commentary is that it eliminates time-consuming dictionary work. While there are many occasions where a dictionary is absolutely necessary for developing a nuanced reading of the Greek, in most instances any advantage that may come from looking up a word and exploring alternative meanings is outweighed by the time and effort spent in the process. Many continue to defend this practice, but I am convinced that such work has little pedagogical value for intermediate and advanced students and that the time saved by avoiding such drudgery can be better spent reading more Greek, reviewing morphology, memorizing vocabulary, mastering principal parts of verbs, and reading advanced-level commentaries and secondary literature.

As an alternative to dictionary work, this commentary offers two approaches to building knowledge of vocabulary. First, I isolate the words that occur 8 or more times for immediate drilling and memorization. Second, I include the number of occurrences of each Greek word at the end of each definition entry. I encourage readers who have mastered the core vocabulary list to single out, drill and memorize moderately common words (e.g. 4-7 times) as they encounter them in the reading and devote comparatively little attention to words that occur once or twice. Altogether, I am confident that readers who follow this regimen will learn the vocabulary more efficiently and develop fluency more quickly than with traditional methods.

Geoffrey Steadman Ph.D.
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
www.geoffreysteadman.com

How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

1. Master the list of words occurring 8 or more times as soon as possible.

A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary before you begin reading. Memorize the words in the running list that occur 8 or more times *before* you read the corresponding pages in Greek. When done, single out and memorize words that occur 4 to 7 times as they appear the the corresponding vocabulary.

B. Research shows that you must review words at least 7-9 times before you can commit them to long term memory, and flashcards are efficient at promoting repetition. If cards are not available, copy and paste a list of vocabulary from this pdf onto a site such as Quizlet or Anki, which will convert the list into flashcards.

2. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses

One of the benefits of traditional dictionary work is that it gives readers an interval between the time they encounter a questionable word or form and the time they find the dictionary entry. That span of time often compels readers to make educated guesses and actively seek out understanding of the Greek.

Despite the benefits of corresponding vocabulary lists there is a risk that without that interval of time you will become complacent in your reading habits and treat the Greek as a puzzle to be decoded rather than a language to be learned. *Your challenge, therefore, is to develop the habit of making an educated guess under your breath each time before you consult the commentary.* If you guess correctly, you will reaffirm your understanding of the Greek. If incorrectly, you will become aware of your weaknesses and more capable of correcting them.

3. Reread a passage immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Greek to memory but also promote your ability to read the Greek as Greek. You learned to read in your first language through repeated readings of the same books. Greek is no different. The more comfortable you are with older passages, the more easily you will read new ones.

4. Reread the most recent passage immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

5. Consult an advanced-level commentary for a more nuanced interpretation

After your initial reading of a passage and as time permits, consult another commentary. Your initial reading will allow you to better understand the advanced commentary, which in turn will provide a more insightful literary analysis than is possible in this volume.

Xenophon's *Anabasis* IV Core Vocabulary (8 or more times)

The following is an running list of all words that occur eight or more times in Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book IV. The glossary includes an alphabetized list of these same words. The number preceding each dictionary entry is the page number where the word first occurs. The number at the end of each dictionary entry is the number of occurrences of each word in the commentary.

- 1 **ἀλλά**: but, yet, 66
- 1 **ἀνα-βαίνω**: to go up, climb, mount, 10
- 1 **ἀφ-ικνέομαι**: to come, arrive, 14
- 1 **βασιλεύς, ὁ**: a king, chief, 10
- 1 **γίγνομαι**: to come to be, become, be born, 48
- 1 **δέ**: but, and, on the other hand, 377
- 1 **δή**: indeed, surely, really, certainly, just, 34
- 1 **διά**: through (+gen) on account of (+ acc), 34
- 1 **Ἕλληγν, Ἕλληγνος, ὁ**: Greek, 37
- 1 **ἐν**: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 70
- 1 **ἐνθα**: here, there, where, 20
- 1 **ἐπεί**: when, after, since, because, 41
- 1 **μετά**: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 12
- 1 **μέν**: on the one hand, 94
- 1 **ὁ, ἡ, τό**: the, 1135
- 1 **ὅσος, -η, -ον**: as many as; all who or which 21
- 1 **οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ**: not, 57
- 1 **ποιέω**: to do, make, create, compose, 29
- 1 **ποταμός, ὁ**: river, stream 35
- 1 **πρός**: to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.), 51
- 1 **στράτευμα, τό**: army, expedition, 19
- 1 **σύν**: along with, with, together (+ gen.), 15
- 2 **ἀκούω**: to hear, listen to, 11
- 2 **ἄκρος, -η, -ον**: topmost; heights, highpoints, 17
- 2 **ἅμα**: at the same time; as soon as, at, along with (+ dat.), 8
- 2 **ἄν (ἤν)**: modal adv., 25
- 2 **αὐτός, -ή, -ό**: -self; he, she, it; the same, 110
- 2 **βούλομαι**: to wish, be willing, desire, 13
- 2 **γάρ**: for, since, 55
- 2 **δια-βαίνω**: to walk or pass over; cross 27
- 2 **δοκέω**: to seem (good), think, imagine, 34
- 2 **εἰ**: if, whether, 37
- 2 **εἶμι**: to be, exist, 200
- 2 **εἰς (ἐς)**: into, to, in regard to (+ acc.), 48
- 2 **ἔχω**: have, possess; be able; be disposed, 64
- 2 **ἤν**: if ever, **ἐάν**, 10
- 2 **Καρδοῦχοι, οἱ**: Carduchians, 17
- 2 **κατα-λαμβάνω**: to seize, lay hold of, find, 16

- 2 λέγω (aor. εἶπον):: to say, speak; gather, 39
 2 ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill, 39
 2 ὅτι: that; because, 38
 2 οὕτως: in this way, thus, so, 14
 2 πολέμιος, -α, -ον: hostile; *subst.* enemy, 54
 2 πρίν: until, before, 9
 2 στρατηγός, ό: general, 20
 2 ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 10
 3 ἀμφί: on both sides, 14
 3 ἀν-ίστημι: to make stand up, raise; rise, 10
 3 ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 14
 3 ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, her-, it-, thems-, 15
 3 ἔπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
 3 ἡγέομαι: to lead; consider, believe (dat) 12
 3 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 36
 3 λαμβάνω: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 35
 3 νύξ, νυκτος, ἡ: a night, 18
 3 Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, ό: Xenophon, 50
 3 όπισθο-φύλαξ, -ακος, ό: rear-guard, 19
 3 όπλίτης, -ου ό: hoplite, armed soldier, 11
 3 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 28
 3 πεδίον, τό: plain, 12
 3 πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 62
 3 Χειρίσοφος, ό: Cheirisophus, 45
 4 ἄνω: up, above, 12
 4 ἐκ, ἐξ: out of, from (+ gen.), 30
 4 ἐπί: near (gen.), to, toward (acc.); near, at, 49
 4 ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: necessities; provisions, 18
 4 κώμη, ἡ: town, country town, 27
 4 οἰκία, ἡ: house, dwelling, building, 12
 4 όπισθεν: (from) behind; in the future; (+ gen.), 9
 4 οὐδ-εἰς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν: no one, nothing, 22
 4 παῖς, παιδός, ό, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 9
 4 πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: much, many, 71
 4 τις, τι: anyone, anything, someone, something, 45
 4 φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 17
 5 ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 8
 5 ἄνθρωπος, ό: human being, person, 18
 5 ἐθέλω (θέλω): to be willing, wish, desire, 8
 5 ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 8
 5 κατα-βαίνω: to step, come down, 9
 5 ὁδός, ἡ: road, way, path, journey, 26
 5 οὐδέ: and not, but not, nor, not even, 13
 5 στενός, -ή, -όν: narrow, 8
 5 φέρω: to carry, bring, convey; fly, 9

- 5 **χώρα, ἡ**: land, region, country, 12
 5 **ὥς**: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 59
 6 **ἀλλήλος, -α, -ον**: one another, 15
 6 **καίω**: to kindle, light, 10
 6 **λίθος, ὁ**: a stone, 12
 6 **λοχαγός, ὁ**: captain, 17
 6 **ὀλίγος -η, -ον**: few, little, small, 10
 6 **πλείων, -οντος**: more, greater, 9
 6 **πῦρ, πυρός, τό**: fire, 10
 6 **ὑπο-ζύγιον, τό**: a yoke-animal, ox, 18
 7 **δεῖ**: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 13
 7 **κατα-λείπω**: to leave behind, abandon, 8
 8 **ἤ**: or (either...or); than, 27
 8 **κλέπτω**: to steal; do or seize secretly, 9
 8 **μάχομαι**: to fight, contend, quarrel, dispute 10
 8 **πάλιν**: again, once more; back, backwards, 12
 8 **προσ-έρχομαι**: to come or go to, approach, 10
 8 **χωρίον, τό**: place, spot, region, 20
 8 **ὥστε**: so that, that, so as to, 14
 9 **ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν**: good, brave, capable, 9
 9 **ἄγω**: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 17
 9 **άνήρ, άνδρός, ὁ**: a man, 16
 9 **ἀπο-θνήσκω**: to die off, perish, 9
 9 **ἐνταῦθα**: here, hither, there, thither, then, 28
 9 **ὅμοιος, -η, -ον**: resembling, similar to (dat) 21
 9 **ὁράω (aor. εἶδον)**: to see, look, behold, 50
 9 **παρ-έρχομαι**: to go pass, enter, 13
 9 **ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ**: quick, swift, hastily, 11
 10 **δύναμαι**: to be able, can, be capable, 25
 10 **δύο**: two, 8
 10 **ἐγώ**: I, 14
 10 **εἷς, μία, ἓν**: one, single, alone, 8
 10 **ἔρχομαι**: to come or go, 23
 10 **εὐθύς**: right away, straight, directly, at once 16
 10 **καλός, -ή, -όν**: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 18
 10 **ὄρθιος, -α, -ον**: steep, straight up, sheer, 13
 10 **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ**: who, which, that, 63
 10 **οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο**: this, these, 121
 10 **σταθμός, ὁ**: stage (~5 parasangs, distance covered in one day's journey), 16
 10 **σύ**: you, 15
 10 **φημί**: to say, claim, assert, 28
 10 **ὥσπερ**: as, just as, as if, 9
 11 **ἡγεμών, ὁ**: leader, commander, guide, 15
 11 **ὅπως**: how, in what way; so that, 14
 11 **οὕν**: and so, then; at all events, 18

- 11 φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 8
- 12 ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 11
- 13 πελταστής, ό: light troop (with light shield) 11
- 14 κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 13
- 16 ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 15
- 16 πέτρα, ή: a rock, a ledge, 9
- 17 μένω: to stay, remain, 14
- 18 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 13
- 18 κατά: according to, over (acc); down, against (gen), 25
- 18 πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 14
- 19 λόφος, ό: hill, 9
- 19 λόχος, ό: company, unit of men, 20
- 19 ὑπό: by, because of, from (gen) under (dat) 13
- 22 ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement; arms, 10
- 23 ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
- 23 περί: around, about, concerning, 7
- 25 κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 14
- 25 ὁπότε: when, by what time, 9
- 27 αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 8
- 28 ἵππεύς, ό: a horseman, cavalry, 10
- 28 στάδιον, τό: a stade, (pl. at times στάδιοι), 9
- 29 τρεῖς, τρία: three, 11
- 30 μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 8
- 32 τίς, τί: who? which?, 36
- 35 ἐπειδή: when, since, after, 15
- 36 ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 10
- 36 θέω: to run, 14
- 36 στρατιώτης, -ου, ό: soldier, 16
- 39 φάλαξ, φάλαγγος, ό: phalanx, 11
- 40 ἐνθεν: from there, on one side; from where, 8
- 43 παρασάγγης, ό: parasang (5.7 or 5.3 km), 15
- 44 ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 18
- 44 ἵππος, ό: a horse, 11
- 46 στρατόπεδον τό: camp, encampment; army 8
- 46 χιών, -όνος, ή: snow, 18
- 49 δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 12
- 57 κώμ-αρχος, ό: leader of a town, 11
- 64 βοῦς, ό, ή: ox, bull, cow; cattle, 9

Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	impf.	imperfect	pl.	plural
acc.	accusative	impers.	impersonal	plpf.	pluperfect
act.	active	ind.	indicative	pred.	predicate
adj.	adjective	ind.	indirect	prep.	preposition
adv.	adverb	inf.	infinitive	pres.	present
aor.	aorist	m.	masculine	reflex.	reflexive
dat.	dative	mid.	middle	rel.	relative
dep.	deponent	neut.	neuter	S1517	Smyth §1517
dir.	direct	nom.	nominative	seq.	sequence
disc.	discourse	obj.	object	sg.	singular
f.	feminine	opt.	optative	subj.	subject,
fut.	future	ppl.	participle	subj.	subjunctive
gen.	genitive	pass.	passive	superl.	superlative
imper.	imperative	pf.	perfect	voc.	vocative

1s, 2s, 3s denote 1st, 2nd, and 3rd singular. 1p, 2p, 3p denote 1st, 2nd, and 3rd plural.

The English titles found in the headings throughout the text are added for the benefit of the reader and are not found in the original Greek text. I took the titles directly from Goodwin and White's 1896 edition of *The First Four Books of Xenophon's Anabasis*.

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

-von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΕΩΣ Δ

[ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει ἐγένετο μέχρι τῆς μάχης, 1
καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ὡς βασιλεὺς καὶ
οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνες ἐποίησαντο, καὶ ὅσα παρα-
βάντος τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη
πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατε- 5
ματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 2. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο
ἐνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ
βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια

ἀνά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: going up, ascent, 3

ἄ-πορος, -ον: impassable; without means, 1
βάθος, τό: depth, 3

δηλόω: to make clear, show, reveal, 1

ἐπ-ακολουθέω: to follow after, pursue, 1

Καρδούχειος, -α, -ον: Carduchian, 2

Κῦρος, ὁ: Cyrus, 1

λόγος, ὁ: word, speech, a account, argument 2

μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat, 2

μέγεθος, τό: size, magnitude, 1

μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5

παντά-πασι: all in all, altogether, entirely, 3

παρα-βαίνω: to go pass; transgress, 1

πάρ-οδος, ὁ: passage, entrance, approach, 4

Περσικός, -ή, -όν: Persian, 4

πολεμέω: wage war, make war, (+ dat.), 2

πρόσθεν: before, 3

σπονδή, ἡ: a drink-offering; truce, treaty, 5

Τίγρης, Τίγρητος, ὁ: Tigris river, 4

Τισσαφέρνης, ὁ: Tissaphernes, 2

- 1 [...] The brackets indicate that the editor believes that these lines (sections 1-4) were interpolated (inserted) at a later time and were not Xenophon's own words.

ὅσα...ὅσα...ὅσα: *as many things as...*; the missing neuter pl. antecedent is subject of δεδήλωται in line 6

μὲν δὴ: *indeed*; 'certainly,' expressing certainty, especially in conclusions or, as here, in a summary (S2900)

ἐγένετο: *occurred, happened*; 3s with neuter pl. subject; aor. γίγνομαι

2 ὅς...ἐποίησαντο: *which...*; relative clause

3 οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ...Ἕλληνες: *the Greeks...*; aor. pple. ἀναβαίνω, i.e. those who fought alongside Cyrus against the King in Bk. 1

ὅσα...ἐπολεμήθη: *as many (acts)...*; neuter pl. subject and 3s aor. pass. Πολεμέω, 'commit in war'

- 4 παραβάντος...βασιλέως καὶ

Τισσαφέρνους: gen. abs., the aor. pple.

is sg. but logically modifies both men, who are on the same side of the truce;

Τισσαφέρνε-ος is 3rd decl. gen. sg.

- 5 πρὸς: *against...*

ἐπακολουθοῦντος...στρατευματος: gen. abs.

- 6 τῷ λόγῳ: i.e. account or narrative

δεδήλωται: 3s pf. pass., the missing neut. pl. Antecedent of the ὅσα relative clauses above is the subject

ἀφίκοντο: aor. mid. ἀφικνέομαι

ἐνθα: (*to the place*) *where...*; relative clause

- 7 ἦν: impf. 3s εἰμί

διὰ...: *on account of* ...: as often + acc.

πάροδος: i.e. a path alongside the river

ὄρη ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὴ
 τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν ὁρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. 3. ἤκουον γὰρ 10
 τῶν ἀλίσκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ
 Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἣν μὲν βούλωνται,
 διαβήσονται, ἣν δὲ μὴ βούλωνται, περιάσι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐ-
 φράτου δὲ τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι,
 καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον. 4. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν 15
 ὧδε ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι
 πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ ἄκρα.]

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 6

ἀπό-τομος, -ον: cut off; sheer; severe, 2

Ἀρμενία, ἡ: Armenia, 6

δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7

ἐμ-βολή, ἡ: attack, assault, invasion, 1

Εὐφρήτης, ὁ: Euphrates, 2

Καρδούχειος, -α, -ον: Carduchian, 2

κρεμάννυμι: to hang, suspend, 1

λανθάνω: to escape notice; forget, 5

πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7

περι-έρχομαι: to go around, go about, 4

πηγή, ἡ: spring (of a river), source, 4

πορευτέος, -ον: to be travelled, 2

πρόσω: forwards into, far from +gen 4

Τίγρης, Τίγρητος, ὁ: Tigris river, 4

φθάνω: to act first, act beforehand, 3

ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 2

9 ὄρη: ὄρε-α, neuter pl. ὄρος

αὐτοῦ: intensive pronoun

ἐκρέματο: impf. mid. κρεμάννυμι, (stem: κρεμ-)

ἐδόκει: *it*...; impersonal

δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

10 ὁρέων: gen. pl. ὄρος

πορευτέον εἶναι: *that (they) must*...; 'that it is to... (by them)' ind. disc., impersonal verbal adj. + inf. εἶμι expressing necessity; as often, you may translate in the active

11 τῶν ἀλίσκομένων: *from those*...; gen. of source; pres. mid. pple

ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν... διαβήσονται... περιάσι: *that if*...; 3p aor. opt. δι-έρχομαι and fut. ind. διαβαίνω, περιέρχομαι in a fut. more vivid condition (ἐάν + subj., fut.) where the protasis is in secondary seq. (the opt. replaces ἐάν διέλωμεν) and the apodosis remains in primary seq.

12 ἣν μὲν... ἣν δέ...: *if on the one hand*... *if on*

the other hand...; ἐάν, + pres. subj.

βούλομαι; these are two minor protases within the larger fut. more vivid condition

13 διαβήσονται: fut. dep. διαβαίνω

περιάσι: 3p fut. περι-έρχομαι

καὶ... δέ: *and also*...; καί is adverbial

14 ἐλέγετο: *it*...; impersonal impf. pass. governing ind. disc. with inf. εἶμι

15 καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον: *and it is just so*; parenthetical; 'and it is being disposed thus,' neut. pple as pred.; ἔχω ('holds' or 'is disposed') + adv. is often equiv. to 'to be' + adj.

16 εἰς: *against*...; or 'into (the land of)...

ὧδε: i.e. in the following way

ἅμα μὲν... ἅμα δέ...: *both... and*...; 'at the same time... and the same time...'

λαθεῖν: aor. inf. governed by pple

16 φθάσαι: aor. inf. φθάνω also governed by πειρώμενοι

17 πρὶν: *before*...; as often with acc. + inf.

5. *ἥνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν καὶ ἐλείπετο*
τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον, τηνικαῦτα
ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλλεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται ἅμα 20
τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 6. *ἔνθα δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείτο*
τοῦ στρατεύματος λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας
πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξιν ὀπλίταις εἶπετο

γυμνήτης, -ου, ὁ: light-armed soldier 6
 δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7
 ἥνίκα: at which time, when, since, 1
 λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 6
 παραγγέλεις -εως ἡ: the giving of orders 1

σκοταῖος, -α, -ον: in the dark; dark, 2
 τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 6
 τηνικαῦτα: at that time, then, 2
 φυλακή, ἡ: a watch, guard, 4

18 ἦν: *it...*; 3s impf. εἰμί
 φυλακὴν: *night-watch*; a period of time:
 the night was divided into three or four
 periods in which soldiers took turns
 standing watch of the camp
 ἐλείπετο: *there was...*; impf. pass.
 (τοσοῦτον) τῆς νυκτὸς: (*so much*) of the
 night; partitive gen.; the missing τοσοῦτον
 is the logical subject of ἐλείπετο
 19 ὅσον...διελθεῖν: *as much as to...*; i.e.
 'enough to...' ὅσος + aor. inf. διέρχομαι
 20 ἀναστάντες: aor. pple ἀν-ίστημι
 ἀπὸ...: i.e. as a result of...; gen. source
 ἅμα: + dat.; here as a preposition rather

than an adverb
 21 ἔνθα δὲ: *precisely here, exactly here*; δὲ is
 intensive
 21 ἡγείτο: impf. ἡγέομαι, the verb governs a
 gen. when it means 'to be a leader'
 22 λαβὼν: aor. pple. λαμβάνω
 τὸ ἀμφ(ι) (ἐ)αὐτὸν (στράτευμα): *that*
around...; prepositional phrase with
 reflexive pronoun (αὐτὸν = ἑαυτὸν) in the
 attributive position; i.e. those he commands
 23 Ξενοφῶν: note that Xenophon, the author,
 talks about himself in the 3rd person
 εἶπετο: impf. ἔπομαι

Historical Present

Xenophon frequently employs the present and aorist where English readers expect the simple past and pluperfect. Some readers may wish to preserve the vividness of the Greek, but others will translate present verbs, as γίνονται above, in the simple past and aorists as pluperfects.

οὐδένα ἔχων γυμνήτα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μή 1
 τις ἄνω πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐπίσποιοτο. 7. καὶ ἐπὶ
 μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρὶν τινὰς αἰσθέσθαι
 τῶν πολεμίων· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγεῖτο· ἐφείπετο δὲ αἰεὶ τὸ
 ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς τὰς κώμας τὰς ἐν τοῖς 5
 ἄγκεσί τε καὶ μυχοῖς τῶν ὀρέων. 8. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι
 ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον
 ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ
 καὶ χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις κατεσκευασμένοι αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν 9

ἄγκος, -εος, τό: bend, hollow; glen, 1
 αἰεὶ: always, forever, in every case, 6
 αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 4
 γυμνήτης, -ου, ὁ: light-armed soldier 6
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 7
 ἐκ-λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 3
 ἔπ-εῖτα: then, next, secondly, 4
 ἐφ-έπομαι: to follow after, pursue, 4

κατα-σκευάζω: to equip, furnish; prepare, 1
 κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2
 μύχος, ὁ: recess, nook, corner, 1
 παμ-πολύς, -πολλή, -πολύ: very many, 2
 ὑπερ-βάλλω: to overshoot, surpass, exceed 5
 ὑφ-ηγέομαι: to guide, lead the way, 1
 χάλκωμα, -ατος, τό: of bronze, 1

- 1 εἶναι: inf. εἶμι
 μή...ἐπίσποιοτο: *that...*; or 'lest,' fearing
 clause following κίνδυνος; opt. replaces
 subj. in secondary seq.; aor. opt. ἐφ-έπομαι
 2 ἄνω πορευομένων: *while (they)...*; gen.
 abs. with a missing gen. noun (i.e. the
 Greeks); ἄνω indicates movement uphill
 τοῦ ὀπισθεν: *the rear*
 ἐπὶ: *onto...*
 3 πρὶν...αἰσθέσθαι: *before...*; + aor. inf.;
 Chetrisophus and his troops are the object
 τινὰς...τῶν πολεμίων: acc. subject
 4 ἐφείπετο: impf. mid. ἐφ-έπομαι
 αἰεὶ: *in every case*; i.e. in succession
 τὸ ὑπερβάλλον: *the part passing over*
 (*the hilltop*); i.e. each division of the army;
 neuter pres. pple. as subject
 5 στρατεύματος: partitive gen.
 τὰς ἐν...ὀρέων: all in the attributive

- position modifying κώμας
 6 ἔνθα δὴ: *exactly then, just then*; intensive
 7 ἐκλιπόντες: aor. pple. ἐκλείπω
 ἔχοντες: modifies Καρδοῦχοι
 καὶ...καὶ: *both...and*
 ἔφευγον: *began to...*; inchoative impf.
 8 ὄρη: ὄρε-α; acc. pl. ὄρος place to which
 τὰ...ἐπιτήδεια: *in respect to provisions*; or
 'as for...' acc. respect; πολλὰ is not an
 attributive adj. but neut. pl. obj. of inf.
 ἦν: *it was possible*; + inf., 3s impf. εἶμι
 7 ἦσαν...κατεσκευασμένοι: periphrastic plpf.
 pass. (impf. εἶμι + pf. pple. κατασκευάζω)
 9 καὶ: *also*
 χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις: dat. of means,
 i.e. bronze vessels
 ὧν: gen. pl. relative, the antecedent is
 χαλκώμασι

οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον, 10
 ὑποφειδόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διέναι
 αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας, ἐπέπερ βασιλεῖ πολέμοι
 ἦσαν· 9. τὰ μέντοι ἐπιτήδεια ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυχάνοι ἐλάμβανεν·
 ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε καλούντων ὑπήκουον
 οὔτε ἄλλο φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποίουν. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν 15
 Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη
 σκοταῖοι (διὰ γὰρ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν
 ἢ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο καὶ κατάβασις), τότε δὴ συλλε-

ἀνά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: going up, ascent, 3
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, 4
 δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7
 διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 3
 ἐπεί-περ: the very time when, when; since, 1
 ἐπι-τυχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 1
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 3
 κατά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: going down, descent, 3
 μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 6
 ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 5
 ὅστις, ἥτις, ὃ τι: whoever, which-, whatever, 4

οὔ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 6
 πως: somehow, in any way, 4
 σκοταῖος, -α, -ον: in the dark; dark, 2
 συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5
 τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 6
 τότε: then, at that time, 7
 ὑπ-ακούω: to heed, listen to, hear, 1
 ὑπο-φείδομαι: to spare a little, 1
 φιλῖος, -α, -ον: friendly, allied, 1
 φιλικός, -ή, -όν: friendly, 1

11 ὑποφειδόμενοι: i.e. showing restraint or being merciful toward the ἀνθρώπους
 εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν: *if...should...*; i.e. 'in the hope that/on the chance that...' 3p aor. opt. expressing the motive of the apodosis (S2354)

12 αὐτοὺς: i.e. Greeks; acc. subject of inf.
 ὡς διὰ φιλίας: *as if on account of...*;
 clause of comparison with acc. pl. of the noun φιλία, 'friendship'

τῆς χώρας: gen. obj. of διέναι
 βασιλεῖ: special dat. with πολέμοι

13 ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί

ὅτῳ: *whatever* ...; neut. dat. sg. ὅστις, dat. of compound verb; the antecedent is the neuter plural ἐπιτήδεια

ἐπιτυχάνοι: opt. of a general relative clause in secondary seq.

ἐλάμβανεν: add στράτευμα as subject

14 ἦν: *it...*; 3s impf. εἰμί

(αὐτῶν) καλούντων: (*them when*)...; pres. pple and gen. of source or with ὑπήκουον

15 οὐδὲν: *any*; positive after οὔτε

17 διὰ: *on account of*...; + acc.

τὸ...εἶναι: *...being...*; articular inf. εἰμί as object of διὰ; ὁδὸν is acc. subject

ὅλην...ἡμέραν: *over the...*; acc. of duration

18 ἐγένετο: aor. γίγνομαι with plural subject
 τότε δὴ: *just then, exactly then*; intensive
 συλλεγέντες: nom. pl. aor. pass. pple συλλέγω

γέντες τινές τῶν Καρδούχων τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπετίθεντο,
καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινας καὶ λίθοις καὶ τοξεύμασι κατέτρωσαν, 20
ὀλίγοι ὄντες· ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλλη-
νικόν. 11. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν
διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν
νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ἠϋλίσθησαν· οἱ δὲ Καρδούχοι
πυρὰ πολλὰ ἔκαιον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὁρέων καὶ συνεώρων 25
ἀλλήλους. 12. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν τε ὑποζυγίων τὰ

ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 4

ἀ-προσδοκίτος, -ον: unexpected, unaware, 1

αὐλίζομαι: to bivouac, encamp, lodge, 5

δια-φθείρω: to destroy utterly, kill, ruin, 1

Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Greek, Hellenic, 3

ἐπι-πίπτω: to fall upon, attack, 3

ἐπι-τίθημι: to put upon; add; set upon, attack 4

κατα-τιτρώσκω: to wound severely, 1

κινδυνεύω: to (run the) risk; is likely 1

κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4

μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 6

συν-έρχομαι: come together, meet in battle 3

συν-οράω: see at the same time or together, 1

τελευταίος, -α, -ον: last, final, 6

τόξευμα, -ατος, τό: arrow, 4

τότε: then, at that time, 7

19 τινές: nom. pl. τις

τελευταίοις: on...; i.e. the Greeks; dat. of compound verb

ἐπετίθεντο: impf. mid.

ἀπέκτεινάν: 3p aor.

20 καὶ...καὶ: both...and...

λίθοις, τοξεύμασι: with...; dat. pl. of means κατέτρωσαν: aor.

21 ὄντες: (although)...; pple εἰμί is concessive in sense

ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου: on the sudden; an idiom

αὐτοῖς: upon...; dat. of compound

ἐπέπεσε: aor. ἐπι-πίπτω

τὸ Ἑλληνικόν (στράτευμα)

22 εἰ...συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν: if they

had..., would have ...; contrary-to-fact condition (εἰ aor. ind., ἂν + aor. ind.)

πλείους: πλείο(ν)ες; comparative

23 διαφθαρῆναι: aor. pass. inf.

πολὺ: a majority...; nom. subject

ταύτην...νύκτα: acc. of duration

24 ἠϋλίσθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep., αὐλίζομαι

25 πυρὰ: watch-fires; neuter acc. pl.

κύκλῳ: in...; dat. of manner

συνεώρων: συνεώρα-ον, 3p impf.

26 συνελθοῦσι: dat. pl. aor. pple

27 ἔδοξε: it seemed (best)

τῶν ὑποζυγίων: partitive gen. with the following neut. pl.

ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι, καταλιπόντας 1
 τᾶλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ
 στρατιᾷ πάντα ἀφεῖναι. 13. σχολαίαν γὰρ ἐποιοῦν τὴν πορείαν
 πολλὰ ὄντα τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ
 τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει 5
 πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων.
 δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.

14. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποστήσαντες ἐν τῷ
 στενωπῷ οἱ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὐρίσκοιεν τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφει- 9

αἰχμ-άλωτος, -ον: taken by spear, captive, 4
 ἀναγκαῖος, -η, -ον: indispensable, necessary 2
 ἀνδρά-ποδον, τό: captive, captive-slave, 2
 ἀπό-μαχος, -ον: unfit to fight, 1
 ἀριστάω: to take breakfast, take a meal, 6
 ἀφ-αιρέω: to take away from, remove, 2
 ἀφ-ίημι: send away, let go, release; give up, 4
 δι-πλάσιος, -α, -ον: two-fold, double, 1
 δόξα, ἡ: judgment, decision, opinion, 1

δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 3
 εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 4
 κηρύσσω: to proclaim, make public, 1
 νεωστί: lately, just now, 1
 πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 5
 πορίζω: to provide, furnish, carry, 1
 στρατία, ἡ: an army, expedition, land force, 4
 σχολαῖος, -η, -ον: leisurely, at leisure, 1
 ὑφ-ίστημι: to station secretly; make stand, 4

- 1 δυνατώτατα: superlative; neut. pl. because ὑποζυγίων is neut. pl.
- καταλιπόντας: aor. pple καταλείπω
- 2 τ(ὰ) ἄλλα: *the rest*; 'other (things)'
ὅσα...: *as many as...*; the antecedent is πάντα
- 3 ἦν: 3s impf. with neuter pl. subject
ἀφεῖναι: aor. inf. still governed by ἔδοξε
- 4 ὄντα: pple εἰμί
οἱ...ὄντες: *those...*; pple as substantive
ἐπὶ τούτοις: *over...*; i.e. in charge of...
ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί
- 5 ἔδει: impersonal impf. δεῖ
- 6 φέρεσθαι: pres. mid. inf.
πολλῶν...ὄντων: (*since*)...; gen. abs.
is causal in sense, εἰμί
- 7 δόξαν ταῦτα: *these things seeming (best)*;

- an acc. abs.; aor. pple δοκέω is neut. sg. modifying, as often, a neut. pl. noun; equiv. to ταῦτα ἔδοξε
- 8 ὑποστήσαντες: *stationing (men) secretly*; or 'making (men) stop secretly,' aor. pple. ὑφ-ίστημι;
 - 9 εἴ...εὐρίσκοιεν...ἀφηροῦντο: *if they found, they...*; past general condition (εἰ opt., impf. ind.); impf. ἀφ-αιρέω; the generals are performing a surprise inspection and removing contraband taken by soldiers
τῶν εἰρημένων: *of the things...*; pf. pass. pple λέγω (ἐρ-)
μὴ ἀφειμενον: *not...*; pf. pass. pple pple ἀφ-ίημι modifying indefinite neut. sg. τι; conditionals govern μὴ instead of οὐ

μένον, ἀφηροῦντο, οἱ δ' ἐπείθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλεψεν, οἶον 10
 ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμήσας ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην
 μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μὲν τι μαχόμενοι τὰ
 δὲ καὶ ἀναπαυόμενοι. 15. εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίγνεται χειμῶν
 πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἱκανὰ τὰπι-
 τήδεια. καὶ ἡγείτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, ὠπισθοφυλάκει δὲ 15
 Ξενοφῶν. 16. καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ στενῶν
 ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιόντες ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφεν-
 δόνων· ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν

ἀνα-παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid.*, rest, 4
 ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 2
 ἀναγκαῖος, -η, -ον: indispensable necessary, 2
 ἀφ-αιρέω: to take away from, remove, 2
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 7
 ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 7
 ἐπι-δίωκω: to pursue after, 2
 ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen), 1
 ἐπι-τίθημι: to put upon; add; set upon, attack 4
 εὐ-πρεπής, -ές: good-looking, decent, 1

ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 4
 οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 5
 ὀπισθο-φυλάκω: to guard the rear, 3
 πείθω: to persuade, trust; *mid.* obey, 1
 πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 2
 σφενδονάω: to use the sling, 4
 τοξεύω: to shoot with the bow, 7
 ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 5
 χειμῶν, -ῶνος τό: storm, winter, 1

10 οἱ δ': *and they...*; i.e. the soldiers
 ἔκλεψι: aor. κλέπτω
 οἶον: *for example*; 'in respect to which,'
 a common acc. of respect
 11 ἢ...ἢ: *either...or*
 παιδὸς...γυναικός: i.e. live captives stolen
 away by individual soldiers; gen. object of
 the ppl but one would logically expect
 accusatives following ἔκλεψεν
 τῶν εὐπρεπῶν: partitive gen.
 12 ταύτην...ἡμέραν: acc. of duration
 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. dep. pass.: translate
 as active
 τὰ μὲν...τὰ μὲν: *now...now...*; or 'some

times...at other times;' lit. 'in respect to
 these (circumstances)...in respect to those
 (circumstances);' acc. of respect
 emphasizing the μὲν...δέ contrast
 τι: *some fighting*; inner acc.
 13 εἰς...ὑστεραίαν (ἡμέραν): *during...*
 14 ἦν: *it was*
 τ(ὰ) ἐπιτήδεια: a substantive
 16 ἐπετίθεντο: impf. *mid.* ἐπιτίθημι
 στενῶν...χωρίων: gen. abs., εἰμί
 17 προσιόντες: ppl προσ-έρχομαι
 ἐσφενδόνων: 3p impf. α-contract verb
 18 ἠναγκάζοντο: Assume Xenophon and the
 rear guard as subject; impf. pass.

ἀναχάζοντες σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγελεν ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, 17. ὅτε οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπικέοντο. 20
 ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἄλλοτε μὲν ὅτε παρεγγυῶτο ὑπέμενε,
 τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενε, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγύα ἔπεσθαι,
 ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι πρᾶγμά τι εἴη· σχολή δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν
 παρελθόντι τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ὁμοία
 φυγῇ ἐγίνετο τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. 18. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀποθνήσκει 25
 ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Λεώνυμος τοξευθεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος
 καὶ τῆς σπολάδος εἰς τὰς πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκὰς

αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 1
 ἄλλο-τε: at some time, 1
 ἀνα-χάζω: to draw back, recoil, 2
 Ἀρκὰς, Ἀρκάδος, ὁ: Arcadian, of Arcadia, 5
 ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 6
 βασίας, ὁ: Basias (person), 1
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 2
 ἐπί-κειμαι: set upon; press upon, attack, 3
 θαμινός, -ή, -όν: crowded, close-set, 1
 ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 7
 Λακωνικός, -ή, -όν: Laconian, of Laconia, 2
 Λεώνυμος, ὁ: Leonymus, 1
 ὅτε: when, at some time, 3

- 19 σχολῇ: *in a leisurely manner*; i.e. at a slower pace than desired; dat. manner
 θαμινὰ: adverbial acc.: translate as an adv.
 παρήγγελεν: *would..., used to..., was accustomed to...*; iterative impf.; i.e. to Cheirisophus
 21 ὅτε...ἐπικέοντο: *whenever...*; 3p opt. mid. in a past general temporal clause; the Greeks are the object
 ὑπέμενε: iterative impf. (see above)
 21 ὅτε...παρεγγυῶτο: *whenever...*; 3s pres. pass. opt. (παρεγγυάοιτο) in a past general temporal clause
 22 δὲ: *but*
 ἦγε: impf. ἄγω, not iterative
 παρηγγύα: 3s impf. παρεγγυάω
 23 ἦν: *it was...*

παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7
 παρ-εγγυάω: to pass on word or command 5
 πλευρά, ἡ: a rib, side, 2
 πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 5
 πρᾶγμα, τό: deed; matter, affair, trouble, 3
 σπολάς, σπολάδος, ἡ: leather garment, 1
 σπουδή, ἡ: haste, speed, eagerness, 1
 σχολή, ἡ: spare time, leisure, rest, 3
 τοξεύω: to shoot with the bow, 7
 τότε: then, at that time, 7
 ὑπο-μένω: to remain, abide, wait up, await, 7
 φυγή, ἡ: flight, escape, exile, 3

- ὅτι...εἴη: *that...*; ind. disc.; opt. often replaces indicative in secondary sequence
 πρᾶγμά τι: *some trouble*
 ἦν: *there was...*
 ἰδεῖν: *to see*; inf. of purpose, aor. inf. ὁράω
 24 παρελθόντι (τινί): *for (someone)...*; dat. sg. aor. pple παρέρχομαι modifies a missing dat. of interest
 ὁμοία: pred. adj.
 25 φυγῇ: dat. of special adj. ὁμοία
 26 τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι: *for...*; 'in the view of...' dat. of reference
 Λεώνυμος...βασίας: Xenophon's decision to use personal names reveals an affection for his men: these losses were personal to him and not simply business as usual.
 τοξευθεὶς: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple

διαμπερὲς τὴν κεφαλὴν. 19. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν, 1
 εὐθὺς ὥσπερ εἶχεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον
 ἡτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἠναγκάζοντο φεύγοντες
 ἅμα μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε καὶ ἀγαθῶ ἄνδρε
 τέθνατον καὶ οὔτε ἀνελεῖσθαι οὔτε θάψαι ἐδυνάμεθα. 20. ἀποκρί- 5
 νεται ὁ Χειρίσοφος· 'βλέψον,' ἔφη, 'πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς
 ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· μία δ' αὕτη ὁδὸς ἦν ὄρας ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ
 ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὁρᾶν ἔξεστί σοι ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἳ κατειλη-
 φότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. 21. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον καὶ 9

ἄ-βατος, -ον: untrodden, impassable, 2
 αἰτιάομαι: accuse, charge; blame, 1
 ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 2
 ἀν-αιρέω: to take up; win, gain, 1
 ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 3
 βλέπω: to look, look at, gaze, 1
 διαμπερὲς: clean or right through (acc), 1
 ἐκ-βασίς, -εως, ἡ: going out, way out, exit, 5
 ἔξ-εστί: it is allowed, it is possible, 4
 θάπτω: to bury, 1

θνήσκω: to die, 3
 κεφαλὴ, ἡ: the head, 4
 νῦν: now; as it is, 4
 οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 6
 ὄχλος, ὁ: a crowd, throng, mob, 4
 σπεύδω: to be eager, be urgent, 3
 τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so much,
 so many, 3
 ὑπο-μένω: to remain, abide, wait up, await, 7
 φυλάττω: to keep watch, keep guard, 6

- 1 σταθμόν: *the stopping point*; 'station,'
 Xenophon uses the word to indicate (a) a
 stopping point or (b) the interval that one
 must travel between stopping points
 2 εἶχεν: impf., ἔχω ('holds' or 'is disposed')
 + adv. is often equiv. to εἰμί + adj.
 ἐλθὼν: aor. pple ἔρχομαι
 3 ἡτιᾶτο: impf. αἰτιάομαι
 ἠναγκάζοντο: impf. pass.
 4 καλῶ...ἀγαθῶ ἄνδρε: dual nominatives;
 although Xenophon does not name the dead
 here, his word choice shows his respect for
 his fellow soldiers.
 5 τέθνατον: dual 3rd pers. pf. θνήσκω; the
 pf. denotes a state ('be dead') rather than an
 activity ('have died')
 ἀνελεῖσθαι, θάψαι: aor. inf. mid. and act.
 ἀναίρέω, θάπτω; add 'the two' as object
 6 βλέπον: aor. imperative

- ἐφη: 3s impf. φημί
 πρὸς: often translates as 'at' after βλέπω
 ὄρη: ὄρε-α, from ὄρος
 ἰδὲ: aor. imperative ὁράω (εἶδον)
 ὡς: *how*...
 7 ἐστί: as often, sg. verb with neut. pl. subject
 μία δ' αὕτη ὁδὸς (ἦν): add a linking verb;
 μία may mean 'only' or 'alone'
 ἦν: *which*...; relative clause, ὀρθία, 'steep,'
 modifies fem. ὁδὸς and is not part of clause
 ἐπὶ: *upon*...; dat. of place where
 8 ἀνθρώπων: partitive gen. with ὄχλον
 ὁρᾶν: inf.
 οἳ: *who*...
 κατειληφότες: pf. pple καταλαμβάνω;
 ἔκβασιν is the obj. of both verb and pple
 9 ταῦτ(α): acc. obj.
 ἔσπευδον: 1s impf. + acc.

διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι πρὶν 10
κατελιγῆθαι τὴν ὑπερβολήν· οἱ δ' ἡγεμόνες οὖς ἔχομεν οὐ
φασιν εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν.' 22. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· 'ἀλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω
δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρείχον, ἐνηδρεύ-
σαμεν, ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε, καὶ ἀπεκτείναν-
τινας αὐτῶν, καὶ ζῶντας προυθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου 15
ἔνεκα ὅπως ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν χρῆσάμεθα.

23. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἤλεγχον διαλαβόντες
εἴ τινα εἰδείεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος

ἀνα-πνέω: to breathe (again); recover, 2

ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 4

δια-λαμβάνω: to take or receive separately, 1

ἐλέγχω: to question, examine, 1

ἐν-εδρεύω: to set an ambush, lie in wait, 2

ἔνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.), 2

ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 4

ζάω: to live, 1

ἡμεῖς: we, 5

οἶδα: to know, 5

ὅσπερ, ἤπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 4

παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 5

πράγμα, τό: deed; matter, affair, trouble, 3

προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 1

πως: somehow, in any way, 4

ὑπερ-βολή, ἡ: crossing, mtn. pass; excess, 6

ὑπο-μένω: to remain, abide, wait up, await, 7

φθάνω: to act first, act beforehand, 3

χράομαι: use, employ, enjoy, indulge (dat) 6

10 εἴ πως δυναίμην: *if somehow I should...*;

i.e. 'in the hope that/on the chance that...'

1s pres. opt. expressing motive (S2354)

φθάσαι: aor. inf. φθάνω

11 κατελιγῆθαι: pf. pass. inf. following πρὶν,

ὑπερβολήν is acc. subject

οἱ ἡγεμόνες: *guides*

οὗς: relative

12 οὐ φασιν: *say that...not*; or 'deny that...'

almost never 'do not say...' 3s φημί

εἶναι: inf. εἰμί

ἀλλὰ: *well, then...*; as often, in response

13 ἄνδρας: i.e. as ἡγεμόνες, 'guides'

πράγματα παρείχον: *they gave trouble*;

a common idiom + dat. indirect object

14 ὅπερ: *which very (thing)*; i.e. the ambush,

the clause is antecedent; subject of ἐποίησε

ἀναπνεῦσαι: i.e. recover; aor. inf.

ἐποίησε: *made it that...*; or 'brought it

about that...' here with acc. + inf.

15 τινας: *some*; indefinite

ζῶντας: (*those*)...; acc. pl. pple ζάω

προυθυμήθημεν: 1p aor. dep. pass.

15 λαβεῖν: inf. λαμβάνω

αὐτοῦ τούτου: gen. obj. of ἔνεκα; αὐτοῦ

is an intensive pronoun

16 ὅπως...χρῆσάμεθα: (*namely*) *so that...*

might...; purpose clause in apposition to

previous phrase; aor. opt. in secondary seq.

ἡγεμόσιν: *guides*; dat. obj. of χρῆσάμεθα

εἰδόσι: dat. pl. pple οἶδα governing τὴν

χώραν

17 ἀγαγόντες: aor. pple ἄγω

ἀνθρώπους: i.e. the prisoners

18 εἰ...εἰδείεν: *whether...*; ind. question, 3p

aor. opt. οἶδα

ἢ: *than...*; following ἄλλην

τὴν φανεράν (ὁδόν): i.e. the road that is

evident and already know

ὁ μὲν...ἕτερος: *one (of the two prisoners)*

οὐκ ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν
 ὠφέλιμον ἔλεγεν, ὁρῶντος τοῦ ἐτέρου κατεσφάγη. 24. ὁ δὲ 20
 λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναι, ὅτι
 αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· αὐτὸς
 δ' ἔφη ἡγήσασθαι δυνατὴν καὶ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν.
 25. ἐρωτώμενος δ' εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον χωρίον, ἔφη
 εἶναι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μὴ τις προκαταλήψοιτο, ἀδύνατον ἔσεσθαι 25

ἀ-δυνατός, -ή, -όν: incapable, impossible, 2
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 3
 δυσ-πάριτος, -όν: hard to pass, 1
 ἐκ-δίδωμι, -ον: to give in marriage; give up, 1
 ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 1
 ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 4
 θυγάτηρ, ἡ: a daughter, 2
 κατα-σφάζω: to slaughter, murder, slay, 1

λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 6
 μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 4
 οἶδα: to know, 5
 προ-κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize beforehand, 3
 προσ-άγω: to bring up or to, attach, apply, 3
 τυγχάνω: chance upon, get; meet; happen, 5
 φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic; threat, 1
 ὠφέλιμος, -η, -ον: beneficial, helpful, 1

19 οὐκ ἔφη: *said 'no'*; i.e. said that he did not know; impf. φημί

μάλα πολλῶν...προσαγομένων:
although...; gen. abs. concessive in force;
 φόβων here means 'threats'; ppl is pass.

20 ὁρῶντος τοῦ ἐτέρου: (*while*)...; gen. abs.;
 i.e. the second of the two men

κατεσφάγη: 3s aor. pass., the subject is
 the first prisoner, the man who kept silent

ὁ δὲ λοιπός: i.e. the second prisoner

21 ἔλεξεν: aor. λέγω

οὐ φαίη: *said that (he)...not*; 3s opt. φημί in
 ind. disc. in secondary sequence

εἰδέναι: *that (he)...*; ind. disc.; inf. οἶδα

ὅτι: (*namely*) *because...*; causal, in
 apposition to διὰ ταῦτα

22 αὐτῶ: *his*; i.e. the first prisoner's; dat. of
 possession with θυγάτηρ or possibly dat.
 of agent with the pf. ppl: "by him"

ἐτύγχανε ἐκδεδομένη: *happened to...*; as
 often, τυγχάνω + complementary ppl
 (here, pf. pass. ἐκδίδωμι) is translated as
 'happen' + inf. in English

παρ' ἀνδρὶ: *with her husband*: or 'at the
 house of...' i.e. the first prisoner has a
 daughter living along this alternative road
 αὐτὸς: *he himself*; i.e. the second prisoner

23 ἡγήσασθαι: *that (he)...*; ind. disc. with fut.
 inf.; supply the missing subject

δυνατὴν: + inf.; modifies fem. sg. ὁδόν

καί: *even*; adverbial

ὑποζυγίοις: dat. of means

ὁδόν: *along the road*; acc. extent (S1581)

24 εἰ εἴη: *whether...*; ind. question with 3s
 opt. εἰμί in secondary seq.

ἐν αὐτῇ: *on it*; i.e. fem. ὁδός

ἔφη: impf. φημί; 2nd prisoner is subject

25 δ: *which*; acc. obj. of προκαταλήψοιτο
 εἰ...προκαταλήψοιτο,...ἔσεσθαι: *if they
 do not..., it will be...*; fut. opt. and fut. inf.
 εἰμί; an emotional future more vivid (εἰ +
 ἄν subj., fut. ind.) in which ἄν + subj. in
 the protasis has been replaced by fut. ind.
 to express heightened emotion; in ind. disc.
 in secondary seq. the fut. ind. becomes a
 fut. opt. and the apodosis an inf.

παρελθεῖν. 26. ἐνταῦθα δ' ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγούς καὶ 1
 πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ παρόντα καὶ ἐρωτᾶν
 εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι καὶ
 ὑποστὰς ἐθελοντὴς πορεύεσθαι. 27. ὑφίσταται τῶν μὲν ὀπλιτῶν
 Ἀριστῶνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς [Ἀρκὰς] καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος 5
 [Ἀρκὰς], ἀντιστασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος
 [Ἀρκὰς καὶ οὗτος] ἔφη ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν
 ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη,
 'οἶδα ὅτι ἔψονται πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου.' 28. ἐκ 9

Ἀγασίας, ὁ: Agasias (person), 3
 ἀντι-στασιάζω: to form in rivalry, 1
 Ἀριστῶνυμος, ὁ: Aristonymus (person), 5
 Ἀρκὰς, Ἀρκάδος, ὁ: Arcadian, of Arcadia, 5
 ἐθελοντὴς, ὁ: volunteer, one willing, 3
 Καλλίμαχος, ὁ: Callimachus, 5
 Μεθυδριεὺς, ὁ: of Methydrium, 4
 νέος, -α, -ον: young; new, novel, strange, 3

- 1 παρελθεῖν: aor. inf. παρέρχομαι
 2 καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν: both... and...; πελταστὰς is in apposition to λοχαγούς and ὀπλιτῶν is a partitive or appositional gen.
 τὰ παρόντα: the matters being at hand; pplle πάρειμι
 ἐρωτᾶν: ἐρωτάειν, α-contract inf. ἐρωτάω
 3 εἰ...ἔστιν: whether there was...; ind. question, with historical pres.
 ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός: predicate of γενέσθαι replaces pres. indicative in secondary seq.
 ἐθέλοι ἂν: would...; potential pres. opt.

οἶδα: to know, 5
 ὅστις, ἧτις, ὃ τι: whoever, which-, whatever, 4
 πάρ-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 4
 Παρράσιος -α, -ον: of Parrhesia; Parrhesian 2
 προσ-λαμβάνω: to take in addition, 1
 Στυμφάλιος, -η, -ον: of Stymphalos (city), 4
 συγ-καλέω: to call together, assemble, 2
 ὑφ-ίστημι: to station secretly; stand up, 4

- γενέσθαι: aor. inf. γίγνομαι
 4 ὑποστὰς: nom. sg. aor. pplle
 ἐθελοντὴς: as...
 τῶν ὀπλιτῶν: among...; partitive gen.
 5 Ἀριστῶνυμος...Ἀγασίας: once again, the use of personal names reveals Xenophon's personal regard for his men; with 3s verb
 6 αὐτοῖς: against...; dat. of compound verb
 7 ἔφη: impf. εἶμι
 ἐθέλειν: that (he)...; supply subject
 9 ἔψονται: fut. ἔπομαι
 τῶν νέων: of the young men
 ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου: gen. abs.

τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἴ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων ἐθέλοι 10
 συμπορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται Ἀριστεάς Χίος, ὃς πολλαχοῦ
 πολλοῦ ἄξιος τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο.

1. καὶ ἦν μὲν δείλη, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας
 πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῆσαντες παραδιδόασιν αὐτοῖς,
 καὶ συντίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἣν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ 15
 χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν·
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν
 ἔκβασιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβοηθήσιν ἐκβαίνοντες ὥς ἂν δύνωνται

ἄξιος, -η, -ον: worthy of, deserving of (gen) 1
 Ἀριστεάς, ὁ: Aristes, 2
 γυμνήτης, -ου, ὁ: light-armed soldier 6
 δείλη, ἡ: late afternoon, 1
 δέω (2): to bind, tie, 3
 ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark; turn out, 7
 ἐκ-βασίς, -εως, ἡ: going out, way out, exit, 5
 ἐν-εσθίω: to eat, consume, 2
 κατ-έχω: to hold fast, take possession of, 7
 παρα-δίδωμι: to hand over, give over, 4
 πολλα-χοῦ: in many places or occasions, 1

σαλπίγξ, -ιγγος, ὁ: war-trumpet, 4
 σημαίνω: to show, indicate, give a signal, 3
 στρατία, ἡ: an army, expedition, land force, 4
 συμ-βοηθέω: to join in helping, 1
 συμ-πορεύομαι: to join in traveling, 1
 συν-τίθημι: to agree, put together, 3
 ταξι-αρχος, ὁ: taxiarch (oversees 128 men), 1
 τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: such, this sort, 3
 ὑφ-ίστημι: to station secretly; stand up, 4
 φυλάττω: to keep watch, keep guard, 6
 Χίος, -η, -ον: Chian, of Chios, 2

10 ἐρωτῶσιν: ἐρωτάουσιν; 3p pres.
 εἰ...ἐθέλοι: *whether...*; ind. question with
 opt. replacing a pres. indicative after a
 historical pres. (~secondary sequence)
 καί: *in fact, actually*; adverbial
 12 τῇ στρατιᾷ: *for the army*; dat. of interest
 εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα: *for...*
 ἐγένετο: aor. γίγνομαι
 13 ἦν: 3s impf. εἰμί
 οἱ δ': *and they...*; i.e. Xenophon and
 Cheirisophus are 3p subject
 ἐμφαγόντας: aor. ppl ἐμ-εσθίω
 14 τὸν ἡγεμόνα: i.e. the 2nd prisoner
 δῆσαντες: aor. ppl δέω
 αὐτοῖς: i.e. to the volunteers; ind. obj.
 15 συντίθενται: pres. mid. governing many
 complementary infinitives
 τὴν...νύκτα: *during...*; acc. of duration
 ἣν λάβωσι...: *if...*; ἔαν + aor. subj.,
 protasis in a future more vivid condition
 16 φυλάττειν: *that (they)...*; ind. disc.

ἅμα...ἡμέρᾳ: *as soon as daybreak*
 τῇ σάλπιγγι: dat. of means
 17 τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας: *and that those...*; i.e.
 the volunteers on the hilltop; acc. subj.
 ἰέναι: inf. ἔρχομαι, governed by
 συντίθενται
 ἐπὶ: *against...*
 τοὺς κατέχοντας: *those...*; i.e. the hostile
 Carduchians; pres. ppl
 αὐτοὶ (συντίθενται): i.e. the soldiers with
 Xenophon and Cheirisophus; intensive
 18 συμβοηθήσιν: fut. inf. in ind. disc.
 governed by συντίθενται
 ὥς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα: *as swiftly as*
they are able; ὥς + superlative (here, adv.)
 often means 'as...as (is) possible,' but is in
 fact a clause of comparison with the verb
 missing through ellipsis; in the passage
 above, the verb is included; ἔαν + subj.
 expresses fut. time, equiv. to protasis of fut.
 more vivid

τάχιστα. 2. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς
 δισχίλιοι· καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων 20
 τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἡγείτο πρὸς τὴν φανεράν ἑκβασιν, ὅπως
 ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὡς
 μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ περιμόντες. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ
 ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦν ἔδει διαβάντας πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον ἐκβαίνειν,
 τηνικαῦτα ἐκύλινδον οἱ βάρβαροι ὀλοιστρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ 25

ἀμαξιαίος, -α, -ον: cart-load, wagon-size, 1
 βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 7
 δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α: two thousand, 1
 ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark; turn out, 7
 ἑκ-βασίς, -εως, ἡ: going out, way out, exit, 5
 κυλίνδω: to roll (down) wallow, wander, 5
 λανθάνω: to escape notice, forget, 5
 μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 5
 νοῦς, ὁ: mind, perception, heart, 1

19 συνθέμενοι: aor. mid. pple συντίθημι
 οἱ μὲν: *they...*; i.e. the volunteers
 πλῆθος: *in...*; acc. of respect
 ὡς: *about, nearly*; ‘as if,’ in approximation (S2995)

20 ὕδωρ πολὺ: i.e. rain

ἦν: impf. εἰμί

ὅπως...προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν...: *so that... might...*; purpose clause with 3p opt. in secondary sequence; προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν is a common idiom for ‘pay attention’

21 ταύτῃ...ὁδῷ: *to...*; dat. of compound verb προσέχοιεν

ὄλοι-τρόχος, ὁ: a rolling or round stone, 1
 οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 1
 περι-έρχομαι: to go around, go about, 4
 πλῆθος, ἡ: crowd, multitude; size, 4
 προσ-έχω: to offer, provide; direct, 1
 συν-τίθημι: to agree (upon), put together, 3
 τηνικαῦτα: at that time, then, 2
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 5
 χαράδρα, ἡ: ravine, gully, stream-bed, 1

22 ὡς μάλιστα: as often, ὡς + superlative is translated ‘as...as possible’

23 λάθοιεν: *might...*; aor. opt. λανθάνω in the same purpose clause

ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί

ἐπὶ: *near...*; dat. of place where

24 ἦν: *which...*; relative obj. of pple

ἔδει: impf. impersonal δεῖ

διαβάντας: aor. pple διαβαίνω

πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον: *to the ascent*; once they cleared the ravine they had to mount an steep ascent

μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πέτρας παίοντες 1
 διεσφενδονῶντο· καὶ παντάπασιν οὐδὲ πελάσαι οἶόν τ' ἦν τῇ
 εἰσόδῳ. 4. ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ δύναιτο, ἄλλη
 ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ
 ὤοντο ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· 5
 ἐτύγχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακή-
 σαντες. οἱ μέντοι πολέμοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς
 νυκτὸς κυλίνδοντες τοὺς λίθους· τεκμαίρεσθαι δ' ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ.
 5. οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα κύκλῳ περιμόντες καταλαμβάνουσι 9

ἀν-άριστος, -ον: without breakfast, 1
 ἀ-φανής, -ές: unseen, unnoticed, 1
 δεῖπνον, τό: dinner, meal, 1
 δια-σφενδονάω: to scatter (like slingshot), 1
 εἰς-οδος, ἡ: entrance, a way in, 2
 ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, fewer, 2
 ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 1
 κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4
 κυλίνδω: to roll; wallow, wander, 5
 μείζων, -ον (-ονος): greater, larger, 4
 μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 6
 μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
 οἶομαι: to suppose, think, imagine, 3
 οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 5

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 5
 ὀπισθο-φύλακéo: to guard the rear, 3
 παίω: to strike, smite, 2
 παντά-πασι: all in all, altogether, entirely, 3
 παύω: to stop, make cease, 3
 πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7
 πελάζω: to draw near, approach (dat.) 1
 περι-έρχομαι: to go around, go about, 4
 σκότος, ὁ: darkness, gloom, 2
 τεκμαίρομαι: to judge, conjecture, estimate, 1
 τότε: then, at that time, 7
 τυγχάνω: chance upon, get; meet; happen, 5
 ψόφος, ὁ: noise, sound, 1

- 1 καὶ...καὶ: *both... and...*
 μείζο(ν)ες, ἐλάττο(ν)ες: comparatives in the acc. pl.
 οἱ: relative, the antecedent is ὁλοιτρόχους φερόμενοι: *flying*; 'bearing along,' mid.
 πρὸς...: *against...*; i.e. the rolling rocks hit and set in motion other rocks below
 2 πελάσαι: aor. inf. πελάζω
 οἶόν τε ἦν: *it was possible* + inf.; 'it was the sort to,' οἶος τε + εἰμί is a common idiom for 'to be able' or 'to be possible'
 τῇ εἰσόδῳ: dat. object of πελάσαι
 3 εἰ...δύναιτο, ἐπειρῶντο: *if they were...*, *would...*; past general condition (εἰ + opt, impf. ind.) iterative impf. mid. πειράω
 ταύτῃ, ἄλλῃ: *in this way...in another way*; both dat. of manner

- 5 ὤοντο: impf. οἶομαι
 ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες: *that those...*; ind. disc. with inf. εἰμί; the ppl of ἀπέρχομαι is a substantive and acc subj.
 ἀπῆλθον: aor. ἀπέρχομαι
 ἐπὶ: *for...*; + acc. expressing purpose
 6 ἐτύγχανον...ὄντες: *happened to...*; τυγχάνω + complementary ppl εἰμί
 καὶ: *in fact, actually*; adverbial
 αὐτῶν: *among them*; partitive gen.
 7 οὐδὲν: *not at all*; adverbial acc. (inner acc.: 'made no stop')
 ἐπαύσαντο: aor. mid. παύω
 8 ἦν: *it was possible*; impf. εἰμί
 κύκλῳ: *in...*; dat. of manner
 9 περιμόντες: ppl περι-έρχομαι; i.e. those who volunteered

τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πῦρ καθημένους· καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατα- 10
καίνοντες τοὺς δὲ καταδιώξαντες αὐτοὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ
ἄκρον κατέχοντες. 6. οἱ δ' οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν ὑπὲρ
αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ στενὴ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ ἐκάθηντο οἱ
φύλακες. ἔφοδος μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἦν
οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ ἐκάθηντο. 7. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθα 15
διήγαγον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ὑπέφαιεν, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συντε-
ταγμένοι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστ'
ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς προσελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, ἣ τε

ἀλαλάζω: to raise the war-cry, 1
αὐτό-θεν: from the very spot or moment, 2
δι-άγω: pass, go through; lead across 1
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 7
ἐφ-οδος, ἡ: an approach, access, 1
ἴημι: to send, throw; let go, release, 4
κάθ-ημαι: to sit, be seated, 4
κατα-διώκω: to pursue or chase closely, 1
κατα-καίνω: to kill, slay, 2
κατ-έχω: to hold fast, take possession of, 7

λανθάνω: to escape notice, forget, 5
μαστός, ὁ: mound, round hill; a breast, 7
μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 6
ὁμίχλη, ἡ: mist, fog, 1
σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ὁ: war-trumpet, 4
σιγῇ: in silence, 1
συν-τάττω: to post/marshall together, order 3
ὑπο-φαίνω: to show oneself, break, 2
φθέγγομαι: utter a sound, cry out, 2
φύλαξ, -ακος, ὁ: guard, sentinal, protector, 4

10 τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ: *some...others*; i.e. the enemy guards; acc. obj. of the participles
κατακαίοντες...καταδιώξαντες: nom. pl. aor. pple
11 αὐτοί: i.e. the volunteers with the guide; intensive pronoun;
ὡς...κατέχοντες: *on the grounds that...*; or 'since,' ὡς + pple expresses alleged cause, i.e. from the character's, not narrator's, point of view
12 οἱ δ': *but they...*
ἦν: *there was*
13 παρ(ὰ) ὃν: *along which*; relative pronoun
ἡ στενὴ αὕτη ὁδός: = αὕτη ἡ στενὴ ὁδός; unusual word order: according to Smyth, an attributive adj. (here, ἡ στενὴ) may be separated from its noun by a pronoun (here,

demonstrative αὕτη) (S1181)
ἐφ' ἣ: *upon...*; relative
ἐκάθηντο: impf. κάθημαι
14 ἐπὶ: *to...*
15 οἱ: *who...*
16 διήγαγον: 3p aor.
ὑπέφαιεν: *began to...*; inchoative impf.
σιγῇ: *in...*; dat. of manner
συντεταγμένοι: pf. pass. συντάττω
17 ἐπὶ: *against...*
καὶ γὰρ: *and indeed*; γὰρ is adverbial (S2814)
18 ἔλαθον: aor. λανθάνω + aor. pple.
προσέρχομαι
εἶδον: aor. ὁράω

σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώ-
 πους· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες 20
 ὀλίγοι ἀπέθνησκον· εὖζωνοι γὰρ ἦσαν. 8. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρί-
 σοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος εὐθύς ἔεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν
 φανεράν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς
 ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύ-
 ναντο ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. 9. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι 25
 συνέμειξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ

ἀλαλάζω: to raise the war-cry, 1
 ἀν-ιμάω: to draw up, pull up, 1
 ἀ-τριβής, -ές: unworn, untrodden, pathless, 1
 δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 7
 δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: spearshaft; pole, stem, 4
 εὖ-ζωνος, -ον: well-girdled, nimble, active, 3
 ἔημι: to send, throw; let go, release, 4

- 19 ἔεντο: *rushed*; 'sent themselves,' impf. mid. ἔημι
 ἐπὶ: *against*...
 20 ἐδέξαντο: aor. δέχομαι i.e. did not fight but instead retreated
 λιπόντες: aor. pple λείπω
 21 εὖζωνοι: i.e. they could move quickly because they were impeded by arms and equipment
 γὰρ: explaining why so few enemy died
 ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί
 οἱ...Χειρίσοφον: i.e. those under Cheirisophus' command
 22 τῆς σάλπιγγος: gen. of source with pple ἔεντο: *rushed*; impf. mid. ἔημι
 κατὰ: *along*...; or 'over...'
 23 κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς: *along*...; i.e. they made their way up where there were no paths: they made paths where none existed

λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 6
 προ-κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize beforehand, 3
 σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ὁ: war-trumpet, 4
 συμ-μίγνυμι: to join together, unite with, 1
 τυγχάνω: chance upon, get; meet; happen, 5
 φθέγγομαι: utter a sound, cry out, 2

- 24 ἢ (ὁδῶ): *on which (path)*; assume fem. ὁδῶ, dat. of means/manner, different soldiers used different paths
 ἔτυχον...ὄντες: *happened to*...; common translation for τυγχάνω + complementary pple; here aor. with the pple εἰμί
 ἀναβάντες: aor. pple ἀναβαίνω
 ὡς ἐδύναντο: *as*...; i.e. as well as they were able; a clause of comparison
 25 ἀνίμων: ἀν-ιμασον, 3p impf. α-contract ἀν-ιμάω; the soldiers held out their spears to their comrades below them to pull them up and help them scale the hill
 τοῖς δόρασι: dat. of means
 26 συνέμειξαν: aor. συν-μίγνυμι
 τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι: *with*...; dat. of compound verb; dat. pl. aor. pple

ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἐπορεύετο ἥπερ οἱ 1
 τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐοδωτάτη γὰρ ἦν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις·
 τοὺς δὲ ἡμίσεις ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἔταξε. 10. πορευόμενοι
 δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατελιγμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν
 πολεμίων, οὓς ἢ ἀποκόψαι ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεξεῦχθαι ἀπὸ 5
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἥπερ
 οἱ ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια οὐκ ἦν ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη ἐκβῆναι.
 11. ἔνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις προσβάλλουσι πρὸς
 τὸν λόφον ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες 9

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, 4

ἀπο-κόπτω: to cut off, drive off, dislodge, 2

δια-ζεύγνυμι: to separate, disjoin, 1

ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark; turn out, 7

ἐν-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 2

εὐ-οδος, -ον: easy to pass, accessible, 3

ἡμιοις, -εια, -υ: half, 4

κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4

ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 4

παρα-κελεύομαι: to order, urge, encourage, 2

προσ-βάλλω: to attack, strike against, dash 3

τάττω: post, station, arrange, order, 6

1 τοὺς ἡμίσεις... τοὺς δὲ ἡμίσεις: *one half... the other half...*

ἥπερ (ὁδῶ ἐπορεύθησαν): *by the very path...*; or 'just as...' relative clause with missing verb; dat. of manner

2 εὐοδωτάτη: superlative

ἦν: impf. εἰμί

τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις: *for...*; dat. of interest

3 ἔταξε: aor.

4 λόφῳ: dat. of compound verb

καταειλημένῳ: pf. pass. pple

καταλαμβάνω

ὑπὸ: *by...*; + gen. expressing agency

5 οὓς: *whom...*

ἢ...ἢ: *either...or*

ἀποκόψαι: aor. act. inf.; supply 'the enemy' as object

διεξεῦχθαι: pf. pass. inf.

ἀπὸ: *from...*; gen. of separation

6 αὐτοὶ: *they themselves*; Xenophon's men

ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν: *could have...*; or 'would have...' ἂν + aor. dep. pass. ind. in a

contrary to fact (past unrealized potential)

ἥπερ (ὁδῶ ἐπορεύθησαν): *by the very path...*; or 'just as...' relative clause with missing verb; dat. of manner

7 τὰ...ὑποζύγια: *that...*; acc. subj. of the aor. inf. ἐκβαίνω

ἦν: *it was possible*

ἄλλη...ταύτη: *in another way, in this way*; assume fem. ὁδῶ, dat. of manner

8 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then, exactly then*; intensive παρακελευσάμενοι: aor. mid. pple + dat. of compound verb

προσβάλλουσι: 3p pres.

ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις: *with companies of men in columns*; 'straight units,' manner

9 κύκλῳ: *in...*; dat. of manner

καταλιπόντες: aor. pple

ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλονται φεύγειν. 12. καὶ τέως 10
 μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπη ἐδύναντο ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι
 ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ προσίεντο, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ
 λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν τε παρεληλύθεσαν οἱ
 Ἕλληνες καὶ ἕτερον ὁρῶσιν ἔμπροσθεν λόφον κατεχόμενον
 ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὖθις ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι. 13. ἐννόησας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν 15
 μή, εἰ ἔρημον καταλίποι τὸν ἡλωκότα λόφον, [καὶ] πάλιν
 λαβόντες οἱ πολέμοι ἐπιθοῦντο τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις παριοῦσιν
 (ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια ἅτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 6

ἅτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 3

αὖθις: back, back again, backwards, 2

ἄφ-οδος, ὁ: departure; way of departure, 1

βάλλω: to throw, cast; shoot, 3

βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 7

ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 7

ἔμ-προσθεν: in front, before, 5

ἐν-νοέω: to be anxious; consider, reflect, 1

ἐρήμος, -ον: deserted, desolate, 4

ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 4

κατ-έχω: to hold fast, take possession of, 7

λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 6

ὅπη: where; in what way, how, 3

πειθω: to persuade, trust; *mid.* obey, 1

προσ-ίημι: to send to; allow; undertake, 4

τέως: for a while, for a time, meanwhile, 1

τοξεύω: shoot with the bow, shoot arrows, 7

φυγῇ, ἡ: flight, escape, exile, 3

10 τοῖς πολεμίοις: *for...*; dat. of interest

εἰ βούλονται: pres. opt., protasis with the corresponding apodosis suppressed

ὅπη ἐδύναντο: *in what way they...*; the subject are the Greeks, same as αὐτοὺς

11 ἕκαστος: *each*; i.e. individually, sg. in apposition to 3p subject of ἐδύναντο

12 ἔβαλλον: i.e. other missiles than arrows
 προσίεντο: *rush forward*; 'send themselves forward,' impf. προσίημι

φυγῇ: *in...*; dat. of manner

13 καὶ τοῦτόν τε...καί: *and when...then...*;
 τε...καί here describes actions that are occurring at the same time

τοῦτόν (λόφον): *this one*; i.e. this hill
 παρεληλύθεσαν: plpf. act. παρ-έρχομαι

14 (αὐτοῖς) ὁρῶσιν ἔμπροσθεν: *to (those Greeks)...*; dat. of reference, dat. pl.
 pple. ὁράω with ἐδόκει

κατεχόμενον: pres. pass. pple, i.e. by the enemy

15 ἐπὶ τοῦτον (λόφον): *onto...*

16 μή...ἐπιθοῦντο: *that...*; or 'lest,' a fearing clause with opt. in secondary sequence; 3p contracted aor. opt. *mid.* ἐπιτίθημι (θε-)

καταλίποι: aor. opt. καταλείπω

ἡλωκότα: acc. sg. pf. pple ἀλίσκομαι

τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις: *on...*; dat. obj. of compound verb

17 παριοῦσιν: dat. pl. pple παρ-έρχομαι

18 ἐπὶ πολὺ: *over a great (distance)*; i.e. extended in a long column

ἅτε: *inasmuch as* + pple; or 'since + pple'
 ὥς + pple indicates alleged cause from the character's point of view, while ἅτε + pple indicates the cause from the speaker's viewpoint (in this case, Xenophon's point of view)

πορευόμενα), καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου λοχαγούς, Κηφισό-
 δωρον Κηφισοφῶντος Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου 20
 Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν Ἀργεῖον φυγάδα, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν
 τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ
 τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον αἰροῦσιν. 14. ἔτι δ' αὐτοῖς τρίτος μαστός
 λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ κατα-
 ληφθείσης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐβελοντῶν. 15. ἐπεὶ δ' 25
 ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀμαχητὶ
 τὸν μαστόν, ὥστε θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπώπτειν

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 4
 αἰρέω: seize, take; *mid.* choose, 3
 ἀ-μαχητὶ: without battle, without a fight, 1
 Ἀμφιδήμος, ὁ: Amphidemus, 1
 Ἀμφικράτης, ὁ: Amphicrates, 2
 Ἀργεῖος, -α, -ον: Argive, of Argos, 2
 Ἀρχαγόρας, ὁ: Archagoras, 2
 βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 7
 δεύτερος, -η, -ον: second, 1
 ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 7
 ἐβελοντής, ὁ: volunteer, one willing, 3
 ἔτι: still, besides, further, 7

θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous,
 strange, 2
 Κηφισόδωρος, ὁ: Cephisodorus, 2
 Κηφισόφων, ὁ: Cephisophon, 1
 λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 6
 λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 6
 μαστός, ὁ: mound, round hill; a breast, 7
 τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 4
 τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 1
 ὑπ-οπτέω: to be suspicious, suspect, 1
 φυγάς, -άδος, ὁ: fugitive, an exile, 1
 φυλακή, ἡ: a watch, guard, 4

19 ἐπι...: upon...
 λοχαγούς: *captains*; followed by three acc.
 names in appositio
 Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος Ἀθηναῖον:
*Cephisodorus (son) of Cephisophon, the
 Athenian*; Greeks names often included the
 name of the father in the genitive; this
 applies for the next name as well.
 21 αὐτός: *he himself*; i.e. Xenophon
 22 ἐπὶ: *onto...*; acc. place to which
 τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ: *in...*; dat. of manner
 αὐτός means 'same' in the attributive
 position
 τοῦτον: i.e. the λόφον
 23 αὐτοῖς: *for...*; dat. of interest

24 πολὺ: *far*; adverbial acc. (acc. of extent in
 degree)
 ὀρθιώτατος: superlative
 ὁ...: *the one over...*; i.e. the hill, what
 follows is in the attributive position
 describing ὁ μαστός
 ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ: *near...*
 καταληφθείσης: gen. sg. aor. pass. ppl
 καταλαμβάνω
 25 τῆς νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. of time within
 ὑπὸ: *by...*; + gen. expressing agency
 27 ὥστε...γενέσθαι: *so as to...*; result clause
 πᾶσι: dat. of reference: in the eyes of all
 ὑπώπτειν: 3p impf.

δείσαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῦντο ἀπολιπεῖν. 1
οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου καθορῶντες τὰ ὅπισθεν γιγνόμενα
πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἐχώρουν. 16. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν
σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαιναν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους
ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμείξαιαν, 5
καὶ προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα
εἶπε. 17. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος
πεφευγὼς καὶ λέγει ὥς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου καὶ
ὅτι τεθνήασι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι

ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 8

Ἀμφικράτης, ὁ: Amphicrates, 2

ἀπο-κόπτω: to cut off, drive off, dislodge, 2

ἀπο-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 4

ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 2

Ἀργεῖος, -α, -ον: Argive, of Argos, 2

Ἀρχαγόρας, ὁ: Archagoras, 2

δεῖδω: to fear, 5

θνήσκω: to die, 3

καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 7

Κηφισόδωρος, ὁ: Cephisodorus, 2

κυκλόω: to encircle, surround, 1

νέος, -α, -ον: young; new, novel, strange, 3

ὁμαλός, -ή, -όν: level (ground), even, 2

πολιορκέω: to besiege, blockade, 1

προ-έρχομαι: to go forth, advance, 4

προσ-μείγνυμι: to engage/mix/unite with, 1

τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 6

τίθημι: to put, place; set, establish, 3

ὑπ-άγω: to come up slowly or gradually, 1

χρόνος, ὁ: time, 1

χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 3

1 δείσαντας: pple δεῖδω modifying αὐτοὺς

αὐτοὺς...ἀπολιπεῖν: *that they...*; i.e. the

enemy; ind. disc. with aor. inf.

μὴ...πολιορκοῦντο: *lest...*; fearing clause,

pres. pass. opt. in secondary sequence

κυκλωθέντες: aor. pass. pple

2 οἱ δὲ: *and they...*; the enemy

ἀπὸ...ἄκρου: i.e. of the latest hill

τὰ ὅπισθεν γιγνόμενα: *the things...*; i.e.

Xenophon and the rear guard fighting with

the barbarians on the first of the three hills;

the enemy left to retake that hill

3 ἐπὶ: *onto...*; acc. place to which

ἐχώρουν: *began to...*; inchoative impf.

4 νεωτάτοις: superlative, νέος, 'young'

ὅπως...προσμίξαιαν: *so that...*; purpose

clause with 3p aor. opt. in secondary seq.

προσμίξαιαν: i.e. catch up with them

6 προελθόντας: (*those*)...; aor. pple προ-

έρχομαι

κατὰ: *along...*

θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα: *to present arms*; or 'to

halt under arms,' an idiom with several

related meanings; aor. mid. inf. τίθημι

7 εἶπε: i.e. ordered; 3s aor. λέγω (εἶπον)

ἦλθεν: aor. ἔρχομαι

πεφευγὼς: nom. sg. pf. pple φεύγω

8 ἀπεκόπησαν: 3p aor. pass.; i.e. the Greeks

on the first hill

9 τεθνήασι: 3p pf. θνήσκω, the pf. denotes a

state, 'are dead,' rather than an activity,

'have died'

μὴ ἀλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας 10
 ἀφίκοντο. 18. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἤκον ἐπ’
 ἀντίπορον λόφον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς
 δι’ ἑρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπῆτει. 19. οἱ δὲ
 ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ’ ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς οἰκίας. συνωμολόγει
 ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα παρήει, 15
 οἱ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου
 συνερρήσαν· †ἐνταῦθα ἴσταντο οἱ πολέμοι†. 20. καὶ ἐπεὶ
 ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους

ἄλλομαι: to leap, jump, 1

ἀντι-πορος, -ον: opposite, over against +dat 1

ἀπ-αιτέω: to ask back, demand back, 1

ἀπο-δίδωμι: to give back, pay (what is due) 2

βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 7

δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 5

δια-πράττω: to accomplish, bring about, 2

ἑρμηνεύς, ὁ: an interpreter, 4

ἤκω: to have come, be present, 7

ἵστημι: make stand, set up, stop, establish, 7

μαστός, ὁ: mound, hill; a breast, 7

νεκρός, ὁ: corpse, body, 2

περί: around, about, concerning, 7

σπονδή, ἡ: a drink-offering; truce, treaty, 5

συν-ομο-λογέω: to agree with; concede, 1

συν-ρέω: to flow together, stream together, 1

τόπος, ὁ: a place, region, 3

10 μὴ ἀλόμενοι: *not...*; aor. pple ἄλλομαι

conditional in sense, thus μὴ rather than οὐ
 κατὰ: *down from...*; gen. place from which

11 ἤκον: 3p impf. ἤκω

τῷ μαστῷ: dat. with special adj.

12 αὐτοῖς: *with...*; i.e. the enemy; ind. obj.

περί...: *about...*

13 ἀπῆτει: impf. ἀπ-αιτέω

14 οἱ δὲ: i.e. the Carduchians

ἔφασαν: 3p aor. φημί

ἀποδώσειν: *that (they)...*; ind. disc., add
 an acc. subject; fut. inf.

ἐφ’ ᾧ: *on the condition that...*; ‘on which
 condition...’, ἐπ(ι) ᾧ; in the context of
 forming a pact or treaty (S1689c)

καίειν: *that (they)...*; supply acc. subject
 μὴ is used instead of οὐ in wishes and

commands

15 ἐν ᾧ: *while...*; ‘in which (time)’

τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα: *the rest of the army*

παρήει: impf. παρ-έρχομαι

16 οἱ δὲ: *and they*; Xenophon and the
 Carduchians

οἱ...τόπου: *those from this place*; i.e. the
 enemy from this particular region distinct
 from those engaging with Xenophon

17 συνερρήσαν: aor. συν-ρέω

†ἐνταῦθα...πολέμοι†: A obelus (†)
 indicates that the word or clause is plainly
 corrupt but the editor cannot see how to
 emend it. Omit in translation.

ἴσταντο: impf.

18 ἤρξαντο: i.e. the Greeks; ἄρχω

ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειντο, ἵεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμοι πολλῶ πλήθει
 καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ 20
 ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαιναν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρους· καὶ ἐνὸς
 μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστὴς
 ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπεν· 21. Εὐρύλοχος δὲ Λουσιεύς [Ἀρκὰς]
 προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ ὀπλίτης, καὶ πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος
 ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπήλθον. 25
 22. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν
 αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐπιτηδεῖσι δαιμιλέσι·

ἄμφω: both, 1

ἀπο-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 4

ἀπο-χωρέω: go from, depart, 2

Ἀρκὰς, Ἀρκάδος, ὁ: Arcadian, of Arcadia, 5

ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 6

αὐτοῦ: in that very place, there, 7

δαμιλῆς, -ές: abundant, plentiful, 2

Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Greek, Hellenic, 3

Εὐρύλοχος, ὁ: Eurylochus, 3

θόρυβος, ὁ: din, noise, uproar, 3

ἵημι: to send, throw; let go, release, 4

κατ-εάσσω (κατ-άγνυμι): to break, 1

κεῖμαι: to lie, lie down 2

κορυφή, ἡ: top, summit, highest part of, 1

κυλίνδω: to roll (down); wallow, wander, 5

Λουσιεύς, -έως, ὁ: of Lusi, Lusean, 3

μαστός, ὁ: mound, hill; a breast, 7

ὁμοῦ: at the same place, together, 3

πλήθος, ἡ: crowd, multitude; size, 4

πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 3

προσ-βάλλω: to attack, strike against, dash 3

προσ-τρέχω: to run to, run at, 2

σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 2

σκηνέω: to encamp, bivouac, set up tents, 5

συν-τάττω: to post/marshall together, order 3

ὑπ-ασπιστής, ὁ: shield-bearer, 1

19 ἔνθα: *where...*; relative clause

ἔκειντο: impf. κεῖμαι

ἵεντο: *began to rush*; inchoative impf. mid. ἵημι

δὴ: *then, now*; temporal

πολλῶ...θορύβῳ: *with...*; dat. of manner

21 ἀπ(ὸ) οὗ...: relative clause

ἐνὸς: *of one (man)*; gen. sg. εἷς

22 κατέαξαν: 3p aor. κατ-άγνυμι

Ξενοφῶντα: acc. object of ἀπέλιπεν, aor. ἀπολείπω

23 τὴν ἀσπίδα: i.e. Xenophon's shield

24 προσέδραμεν: aor. προστρέχω

αὐτῷ: *to him*; i.e. to Xenophon, dat. of compound verb

ὀπλίτης: describing Εὐρύλοχος

ἀμφοῖν: dual dat.

προβεβλημένος: *putting (his shield) in front*; pf. mid. προβάλλω, Eurylochus

defends Xenophon as they withdraw

25 συντεταγμένους: pf. συντάττω

ἀπήλθον: aor. ἀπ-έρχομαι

26 Ἑλληνικόν: add στάτευμα

27 αὐτοῦ: *there*; 'in the very place,' adv.

ἐπιτηδεῖσι: *provisions*

καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν λάκκοις κονιατοῖς εἶχον. ¹
 23. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε λαβόντες
 τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδωσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν
 τοῖς ἀποθανούσιν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν
 ἀγαθοῖς. ^{24.} τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο· μαχό- ⁵
 μενοι δ' οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ ὅπη εἴη στενὸν χωρίον προκατα-
 λαμβάνοντες ἐκώλυνον τὰς παρόδους. ^{25.} ὁπότε μὲν οὖν τοὺς
 πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθεν ἐκβαίνων πρὸς τὰ ὄρη
 ἔλυνε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς πρώτοις ἀνωτέρω πειρώ-

ἄνευ: without (+ gen.), 4

ἀνωτέρω: upper, higher, 2

ἀπο-δίδωμι: to give back, pay (what is due) 2

ἀπό-φραξις, ἡ: blockade, a blocking up, 2

δια-πράττω: to accomplish, bring about, 2

δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 3

ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark; turn out, 7

κονιατός, -ή, -όν: plastered, 1

λάκκος, ὁ: reservoir, cistern, 1

λύω: to loosen, free; *mid.* ransom, 4

νεκρός, ὁ: corpse, body, 2

νομίζω: to believe, think; *mid.* is customary 2

οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 5

ὅπη: where; in what way, how, 3

πάρ-οδος, ὁ: passage, entrance, approach, 4

πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7

προ-κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize beforehand, 3

ὑστεραίῳ, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 5

1 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*

ὥστε...εἶχον: *that...*; result clause; impf.
 ἔχω; add τὸν οἶνον as obj.

2 διεπράξαντο: i.e. brought it about through
 bargaining with the Carduchians; aor. *mid.*

λαβόντες: aor. pple λαμβάνω

3 ἀπέδωσαν: aor. ἀπο-δίδωμι

τὸν ἡγεμόνα: i.e. the non-Greek forced to
 guide them

4 τοῖς ἀποθανούσιν: *for (those)...*; dat. of
 interest; aor. pple ἀποθνήσκω

ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν: *as much as possible*;
 'from what is possible'

νομίζεται: *it is customary*; impersonal
 ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς: *for...*; dat. interest

5 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ (ἡμέρᾳ): *on...*; time when

6 ὅπη εἴη...: *wherever...*; past general
 relative clause with opt. εἰμί replacing an
 ἄν + subj. in primary seq.

7 ἐκώλυνον: *tried to...*; inchoatic impf. or
 iterative impf. ('kept...')

παρόδους: hindered not several at once but
 several passages in succession

ὁπότε...κωλύοιεν: *whenever...*; general
 temporal clause, secondary seq. with opt.

8 ὀπισθεν: *from the rear*

ὄρη: ὄρε-α, neuter ὄρος

9 ἔλυνε: *would break through*; iterative impf.,
 Xenophon did this more than once

τοῖς πρώτοις: *for...*; dat of interest; in
 contrast to the rear guard

μενος γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυνόντων, 26. ὁπότε δὲ τοῖς ὀπισθεν 10
ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων καὶ πειρώμενος ἀνωτέρω
γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυνόντων ἔλυνε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου
τοῖς ὀπισθεν· καὶ αἰεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς
ἀλλήλων ἐπεμέλοντο. 27. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁπότε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβάσι 15
πολλὰ πράγματα παρείχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν·
ἐλαφροὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥστε καὶ ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν·
οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. 28. ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ
τοξόται ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς τριπλήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύ-

αἰεῖ: always, forever, in every case, 6
ἀνωτέρω: upper, higher, 2
ἀπο-φεύγω: to escape, flee from, 1
ἀπό-φραξις, ἡ: blockade, a blocking up, 2
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent; noble, 2
βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 7
βοηθέω: to come to aid, to assist, aid, 2
ἐγγύ-θεν: from nearby, from near, 1
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); *adv.* nearby, 7
ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark; turn out, 7
ἐλαφρός, -ά, -όν: light (in weight), 1
ἐπι-μέλ(ε)ομαι: to care for, look after (gen) 3

- 10 τῶν κωλυνόντων: *than those...*; i.e. the enemy, gen. of comparison; pres. pple
ὁπότε...ἐπιθοῖντο: *whenever...*; general temporal clause in secondary seq., aor. mid. opt. ἐπιτίθημι
τοῖς ὀπισθεν: *those in the rear (guard)*; dat. of compound verb
12 τῶν κωλυνόντων: see line 10
ἔλυνε: *would break through*; iterative impf.,
13 τοῖς ὀπισθεν: *for...*; dat. of interest
ἐβοήθουν: Xenophon and Cheirisophus are the subject
14 ἦν...ὁπότε: *sometimes in fact*; ‘there was (a time) in fact when,’ a common idiom caused by the lack of an antecedent for the relative clause that follows (S2515); καὶ is adverbial

ἐπι-τίθημι: to put upon; add; set upon, attack 4
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 7
λύω: to loosen, free; *mid.* ransom, 4
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 5
πάρ-οδος, ὁ: passage, entrance, approach, 4
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7
πράγμα, τό: deed, matter, affair, trouble, 3
σφενδόνη, ἡ: sling, stone (from a sling), 2
τόξευμα, -ατος, τό: arrow, 4
τόξον, τό: bow, 4
τοξότης, ὁ: an archer, bowman, 4
τρι-πηχυς, -υ: three-cubits long, 1

- αὐτοῖς...ἀναβάσι: *for those...*; dat. of interest, dat. pl. aor. pple ἀναβαίνω
15 πολλὰ πράγματα παρείχον: παρέχω πράγματα is a common idiom for ‘make trouble’
καταβαίνουσιν: (*while*)...; dat. pl. pres. pple modifies αὐτοῖς
16 ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί
ὥστε...: *so as to...*; result clause, ὥστε + inf.
καὶ: *even*
φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν: note that φεύγω means ‘flee’ or ‘run away’ while ἀποφεύγω means ‘escape’
17 ἢ: *than...*; as often following ἄλλο
18 τριπλήχη: τριπλήχε-α

ματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἰλκον δὲ τὰς νευρὰς ὁπότε τοξεύουεν
 πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ προσβαίνοντες. 20
 τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν
 θωράκων. ἐχρώντο δὲ αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν,
 ἀκοντίοις ἐναγκυλῶντες. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες
 χρησιμώτατοι ἐγένοντο. ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

1. ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν ἠγλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις 25
 ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν, εὖρος ὡς
 δίπλεθρον, ὃς ὀρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν Καρδούχων

ἀκόντιον, τό: javelin, 1
 ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν: left, on the left, 4
 Ἀρμενία, ἡ: Armenia, 6
 ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 6
 αὐλίζομαι: to bivouac, encamp, lodge, 5
 δι-πήχυς, -εῖα, -υ: of two cubits long, 1
 δι-πλεθρος, -όν: of two plethra long, 1
 ἔλκω: to draw, drag, 3
 ἐν-αγκυλάω: to fit thongs (to javelins), 1
 εὖρος, τό: breadth, width, 3
 θώραξ, θώρακος, ὁ: breastplate, corset, 2
 κάτω: downwards, below, 4

Κεντρίτης, ὁ: Centrites river, 1
 Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ: a Cretan, 3
 νευρά, ἡ: bow-string, string, 1
 ὀρίζω: to divide, define, 3
 πούς, ποδός, ὁ: a foot, 7
 προσ-βαίνω: to go to, approach, step to, 1
 Στρατοκλῆς, ὁ: Stratocles, 1
 τόξευμα, -ατος, τό: arrow, 4
 τόξον, τό: bow, 4
 χρᾶμαι: use, employ, enjoy, indulge (dat) 6
 χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: good, useful, serviceable, 1
 χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 3

19 διπήχη: διπήχε-α; neut. pl.
 εἰλκον: impf. ἔλκω
 ὁπότε τοξεύουεν: *whenever...*; general
 temporal clause, pres. opt. in secondary
 sequence
 20 πρὸς τὸ κάτω...προσβαίνοντες: *stepping*
onto the bottom...; the bow is placed on the
 ground and held firm with the foot
 τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ: dat. of means,
 21 ἐχώρει: *would go*; customary impf.
 ἐχρώντο: + dat., impf. χρᾶμαι
 22 ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν: *whenever...*; general
 temporal clause, aor. opt. λαμβάνω in
 secondary seq.
 23 ἀκοντίοις: *as javelins...*; following αὐτοῖς

in apposition; the arrows were so long
 they could be thrown by hand as javelins
 ἐναγκυλῶντες: a leather loop or thong
 attached to the javelin was used to sling the
 javelin farther and more accurately than
 one otherwise could without the loop
 24 χρησιμώτατοι: superlative
 ἦρχε: impf. ἄρχω + gen. obj.
 25 ταύτην...ἡμέραν: acc. of duration
 26 ταῖς...: the prepositional phrases are in the
 attributive position modifying κώμαις
 εὖρος: *in...*; acc. of respect
 ὡς: *nearly*; 'as if,' in approximation
 (S2995)

χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἀνέπνευσαν ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες 1
 πεδίον· ἀπείχε δὲ τῶν ὁρέων ὁ ποταμὸς ἐξ ἧ ἑπτὰ στάδια
 τῶν Καρδούχων. 2. τότε μὲν οὖν ἠγλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως καὶ
 τὰπιτήδεια ἔχοντες καὶ πολλὰ τῶν παρεληλυθότων πόνων
 μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ 5
 τῶν Καρδούχων πάσας μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον
 κακὰ ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους.
 ὥς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων ἡδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.

3. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὀρώσιν ἱππέας που πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ

ἀνα-πνέω: to breathe (again); recover, 2
 ἀπ-αλλάττω: set free, deliver; escape, 1
 ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5
 ἄσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 2
 αὐλίζομαι: to bivouac, encamp, lodge, 5
 δια-τελέω: continue, persevere (to the end) 1
 ἕξ: six, 1
 ἑπτὰ: seven, 5
 ἡδέως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 2
 κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 5

κοιμάω: to put to sleep, lull to sleep, 3
 μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 4
 μνημονεύω: to call to mind, recall (gen) 1
 πάσχω: to suffer, experience, 3
 πέραν: across, beyond, exceeding (gen), 5
 πόνος, ὁ: work, toil; trouble, 1
 που: anywhere, somewhere; I suppose, 2
 σύμπας, -πασα, -παν: all together, 1
 Τισσαφέρνης, ὁ: Tissaphernes, 2
 τότε: then, at that time, 7

- 1 ἄσμενοι: adjectives in the nom. are often translated as adverbs in English
 ἰδόντες: aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
- 2 ἀπείχε: impf. ἀπέχω, 'be away from'
 τῶν ὁρέων: *from...*; gen. of separation
 ἕξ...στάδια: *for...*; acc. of extent
- 3 τῶν Καρδούχων: possessive gen.,
 modifies ὁρέων
- 4 τὰ (ἐ)πιτήδεια
 πολλὰ: *many times*; i.e. often; adverbial
 acc. with the following pple
 παρεληλυθότων: i.e. 'past' or 'previous';
 pf. pple παρ-έρχομαι
 πόνων: gen obj. of verb of remembering
 or forgetting
- 5 ἑπτὰ...ἡμέρας: acc. of duration
 ὅσασπερ: *for as many (days) as...*; acc. of
 duration in a relative clause

- ἐπορεύθησαν: aor. pass. dep. πορεύομαι
- 6 πάσας: modifies ἡμέρας
- ἔπαθον: aor. πάσχω
- 7 ὅσα (ἔπαθον): *as many as...*; add verb
 οὐδὲ: *not even*; adv.
 ὑπὸ: *at the hands of...*; 'because of...'
 gen. of cause or agent; Τισσαφέρνε-ος
 is gen. sg.
- 8 ὥς: *on the grounds that...*; 'since,' ὥς +
 pple suggests alleged cause from a
 character's point of view
 ἀπηλλαγμένοι: pf. pass. pple
 τούτων: *from...*; gen. of separation
 ἐκοιμήθησαν: 3s aor. deponent
- 9 που: *somewhere*
 ὀρώσιν: ὁράουσιν, 3p pres.

ἐξωπλισμένους ὡς κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, πεζοὺς δ' ἐπὶ ταῖς 10
 ὄχθαις παρατεταγμένους ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων ὡς κωλύσοντας
 εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν ἐκβαίνειν. 4. ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Ὀρόντα καὶ
 Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι μισθοφόροι.
 ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι εἶναι·
 ὄπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. 5. αἱ δὲ ὄχθαι αὗται 15
 ἐφ' ὧν παρατεταγμένοι οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπέειχον· ὁδὸς δὲ μία ὁρωμένη ἦν ἄγουσα
 ἄνω ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ

ἄλκιμος, -ον: stout, brave, 2

ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5

Ἀρμενία, ἡ: Armenia, 6

Ἀρμένιοι, οἱ: Armenian, 3

Ἀρτούχας, -ου (or -α) δ: Artuchas, 1

γέρρον, τό: wicker-work; wicker-shield, 6

ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark; turn out, 7

ἐλεύθερος, -η, -ον: free, 1

ἐξ-οπλίζομαι: to arm fully, 2

λόγχη, ἡ: spearhead; spear, lance, 4

μακρός, ἄ, ὄν: long, far, distant, large, 1

10 ὡς κωλύσοντας: *so that...*; ὡς + fut.
 pple expresses purpose

διαβαίνειν: *from...*; after κωλύσοντας

πεζοὺς: *foot-soldiers*; '(those) on foot'

11 παρατεταγμένος: pf. pass. pple

ὡς κωλύσοντας: see above

12 ἐκβαίνειν: *from...*; after κωλύσοντας

Ὀρόντα καὶ Ἀρτούχα: (*the troops*) of...;
 both are Doric genitives (S225, common in
 non-Greek names with nom. -ας) and
 predicate following ἦσαν

14 ἐλέγοντο: impf. passive λέγω

εἶναι: inf. εἶμι

Μάρδοι, οἱ: Mardian, 1

μισθο-φορος, ὁ: mercenary, serving for hire, 2

Ὀρόντας, -ου (or -α) δ: Orontas, 1

ὄχθη, ἡ: bank (of a river), bluff, 4

παρα-τάττω: draw up in battle order, 5

πεζός, ἡ, ὄν: on foot, 1

πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7

πλέθρον, τό: a plethron (=100 feet), 3

τέτταρες, -α: four, 6

Χαλδαῖοι, οἱ: Chaldaeans, 2

χειρο-ποίητος, -ον: made by hand, 1

15 ὄπλα: *as arms*; acc. apposition

16 ἐφ' ὧν: *upon which*

παρατεταγμένοι...ἦσαν: periphrastic plpf.
 pass. (pf. pass. pple + impf. εἶμι)

τρία...πλέθρα: *over...*; acc. of extent

17 ἀπέειχον: *was far away*

ὁρωμένη: *seen*; or 'visible,' this pres. pass.
 pple is a predicate

ἄγουσα ἄνω: pple modifying fem. ὁδός

18 ταύτῃ: *in this way*; dat. of manner

ἐπειρῶντο: ἐπειράοντο; impf. πειράω

Ἕλληνες. 6. ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμένοις τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν
 ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τραχὺς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλοις λίθοις καὶ 20
 ὀλισθηροῖς, καὶ οὐτ' ἐν τῷ ὕδατι τὰ ὄπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ
 μή, ἥρπαζεν ὁ ποταμός· ἐπὶ τε τῆς κεφαλῆς τὰ ὄπλα εἴ τις
 φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίνοντο πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τὰλλα βέλη,
 ἀνεχώρησαν καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν.
 7. ἔνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους ἐώρων 25
 τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις.
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὁρώσι μὲν τοῦ
 ποταμοῦ τὴν δυσπορίαν, ὁρώσι δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν κωλύ-

ἀ-θυμία ἡ: faintheartedness, discouragement 3
 ἀνα-χωρέω: to go back, withdraw, 1
 ἀρπάζω: seize, carry off, kidnap, 3
 αὐτοῦ: in that very place, there, 7
 βέλος, -εος, τό: missile, arrow, dart, 2
 γυμνός, -ή, -όν: naked, unclad, unarmed, 4
 δυσπορία, ἡ: difficulty in passing, 1
 κεφαλή, ἡ: the head, 4
 μαστός, ὁ: mound, hill; a breast, 7
 ὀλισθηρός, -ή, -όν: slippery, 1

οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 6
 πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7
 πρόσθεν: before, 3
 στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, take a position, 4
 συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5
 τόξευμα, -ατος, τό: arrow, 4
 τραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rough, jagged, 2
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 5
 φαίνω: to show; mid. appear, seem, 6

19 πειρωμένοις: *for (those)...*; dat. of interest
 τε...καί: *both...and...*; the two clauses up
 to ὀλισθηροῖς are in the same ἐπεὶ clause
 ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν: *over their chests*
 20 λίθοις: *with...*; dat. means
 καὶ οὐτ(ε): *also...not*; in this main clause,
 καί is adverbial and οὐτε is used instead of
 οὐ to correspond to τε above
 21 ἦν: *it was possible*
 εἰ δὲ μή: *and if not*; not logically correct; we
 should expect the positive 'and if they held
 the arms...' from the previous sentence.
 22 ἥρπαζεν: assume ὅπλα as object
 ἐπὶ...: *over...*
 εἴ...φέροι...ἐγίνοντο: *if...carried, they...*;
 past general condition (εἰ opt., impf. ind.)
 23 πρὸς: *against..., in regard to...*; i.e.
 enemies could attack him

τὰλλα βέλα: τὰ ἄλλα βέλε-α
 24 αὐτοῦ: *there*; 'in the very spot,' adv.
 25 ἔνθα...ἦσαν: *(at the place) where...*;
 relative clause with missing antecedent
 τὴν...νύκτα: *during...*; acc. of duration
 ἐπὶ: *upon...*; + gen. ὄρε-ος
 ἐώρων: ἐωράον, 3p impf. ὁράω
 26 συνειλεγμένους: pf. pass. pple
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ: *just then, precisely then*;
 intensive
 27 τοῖς Ἕλλησιν: dat. of possession: either
 (1) 'there were to the Greeks' or (2) 'the
 Greeks had'
 ὁρώσι μὲν...ὁρώσι δέ...: dat. pl. pres. pples
 in apposition to Ἕλλησιν
 28 διαβαίνειν: *(them) from...*; as often when
 an inf. follows κωλύω

σοντας, ὁρώσι δὲ τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν ἐπικεισομένους τοὺς ¹
 Καρδούχους ὅπισθεν. 8. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα
 ἔμειναν ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὄναρ εἶδεν·
 ἔδοξεν ἐν πέδαις δεδέσθαι, αὐταὶ δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτόματα περι-
 ρυῆναι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅποσον ἐβούλετο. ἐπεὶ ⁵
 δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι
 ἐλπίδας ἔχει καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ διηγεῖται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ.
 9. ὁ δὲ ἤδeto τε καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέφαιναν ἐθύοντο πάντες
 παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί· καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ

ἀ-πορία, ἡ: difficulty, bewilderment, 1
 αὐτό-ματος, -η, -ον: of one's own will, 1
 δέω (2): to bind, tie, 3
 δι-ηγέομαι: to explain, lead through, 2
 ἐλπίς, -ιδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 1
 ἐπί-κειμαι: set upon; press upon, attack, 3
 ἕως (ἡός): dawn, 1
 ἡδομαι: to enjoy, delight in, 1
 θύω: to sacrifice, 3

ἱερόν, τό: (sacrificial) victim, animal, 3
 λύω: to loosen, free; *mid.* ransom, 4
 ὄναρ, τό: a dream, vision in sleep, 2
 ὅποσος, -α, -ον: as much, many, or great as, 2
 ὄρθρος, ὁ: the time just before daybreak, 1
 πάρ-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 4
 πέδη, ἡ: fetter, shackles, bindings, 1
 περι-ρέω: flow or fall away on all sides, 1
 ὑπο-φαίνω: to show oneself, break, 2

- 1 ὁρώσι δὲ: *and...*; dat. pl. pple
 τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν: *upon (those)...*; dat.
 pl. pple, dat. of compound verb
 ἐπικεισομένους: fut. mid. pple
- 2 ταύτην...ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα: acc. duration
- 3 ἔμειναν: aor. μένω
- 4 εἶδεν: aor. ὁράω
- 4 ἔδοξεν: *he seemed...*
 δεδέσθαι: pf. pass. inf. δέω
 αὐταὶ (πέδαι): *these (fettors)*
 περιρρυῆναι (ἔδοξαν): (*seemed*) to; aor.
 pass. inf., supply 3p ἔδοξαν
- 5 ὥστε λυθῆναι...διαβαίνειν: *so that*
(he) was...and...; result clause with aor.
 pass. inf. and pres. act. inf.
 ὅποσον: *as great (a distance) as...*; or 'as

- far as,' relative clause with acc. of extent
- 7 καλῶς: *well*; adv.
 ἔσεσθαι: *that it...*; ind. disc. with fut. inf.
 εἰμί in apposition to ἐλπίδας
 διηγεῖται: *explains*; Xenophon is subject
 αὐτῷ: i.e. to Cheirisophus; dat. ind. obj.
- 8 ὁ δὲ: *and he*; Cheirisophus
 ἤδετο: impf. ἡδομαι
 ὡς τάχιστα...ὑπέφαιναν: *as soon as...*; 'as
 quickly as possible' introducing a clause
- 9 ἦν: 3s impf. εἰμί
 καλὰ: *auspicious, favorable*; i.e. the gods
 appear to have approved the sacrifice
 ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου: *in the case of the first*
(sacrificial victim)

πρώτου. καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ 10
 λοχαγοὶ παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. 10. καὶ ἀρι-
 στῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο νεανίσκω· ἥδεσαν
 γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη αὐτῷ καὶ ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι
 προσελθεῖν καὶ, εἰ καθεύδοι, ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τίς τι 15
 ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. 11. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχά-
 νοιεν φρύγανα συλλέγοντες ὥς ἐπὶ πῦρ, ἄπειτα κατῖδοιεν
 ἐν τῷ πέραν ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπ' αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν
 γέροντά τε καὶ γυναικα καὶ παιδίσκας ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱμα-

ἀριστάω: to take breakfast, take a meal, 6
 ἀριστο-ποιέω: to make breakfast, 2
 γέρων, -οντος, ὁ: elder, old man, 1
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 7
 δειπνέω: to dine, have dinner, 3
 δύο: two, 8
 ἐξ-εστί: it is allowed, it is possible, 4
 ἐπ-εγείρω: to awaken, rouse up, 1
 ἐπ-εῖτα: then, next, secondly, 4
 ἱερὸν, τό: (sacrificial) victim, animal, 3
 ἱμάτιον, τό: cloak, mantle, outer garment, 2
 καθ-εύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 1
 καθ-ηκω: to reach down; it is fitting, 1
 καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 7

μάρσιπος, ὁ: bag, 1
 νεανίσκος, ὁ: a youth, 4
 οἶδα: to know, 5
 παιδίσκη, ἡ: young girl, maiden, 1
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7
 πέραν: across, beyond, exceeding (gen), 5
 πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war, 2
 προσ-τρέχω: to run to, run at, 2
 στρατία, ἡ: an army, expedition, land force, 4
 συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5
 τότε: then, at that time, 7
 τυγχάνω: chance upon, get; meet; happen, 5
 φρύγανον, τό: firewood, dry sticks, 1

10 ἀπιόντες: pplē ἀπ-έρχομαι
 ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν: from the sacrifices
 11 τῇ στρατιᾷ: dat. of compound verb
 Ξενοφῶντι: dat. of compound verb
 12 νεανίσκω: dual nom. with 3p verb
 ἥδεσαν: 3p plpf. οἶδα, translate in the
 simple past
 13 ἐξείη: it was permitted (for them); opt.
 ἐξεστί, ind. disc. in secondary sequence
 αὐτῷ: to him; i.e. Xenophon, dat. of
 compound προσελθεῖν, ind. obj. of εἰπεῖν
 καὶ...καὶ...: both...and...
 14 προσελθεῖν... εἰπεῖν: aor. inf.
 προσέρχομαι, εἶπον, governed by ἐξείη
 εἰ καθεύδοι: if ever...; opt. in a past general
 condition; soldiers could approach him at
 any time
 ἐπεγείραντα: modifies acc. subj. of εἰπεῖν

14 εἴ τίς...ἔχοι (εἰπεῖν): if someone...were
 able...; opt. ἔχω + missing inf. εἰπεῖν;
 indefinite nom. τις following enclitic τι
 τι: something (important)
 τῶν πρὸς: of (the things) pertaining to...;
 partitive gen. and preposition phrase in the
 attributive position
 15 τυγχάνοιεν: happened to...; + pplē, opt.
 replacing impf. in ind. disc., secondary seq.
 16 ὥς ἐπὶ πῦρ: for a fire; 'as if for a fire,' ὥς
 expresses intent of the character (S2996)
 κα(ι) (ἐ)πειτα
 κατῖδοιεν: 3p opt. καθοράω parallel to
 τυγχάνοιεν in ind. disc.
 17 ἐν τῷ πέραν: on the side (beyond); i.e. the
 far side of the river
 ἐπ(ι)...ποταμὸν: up to the river itself
 18 ὥσπερ: as it were; or 'it seemed'

τίων κατατιθεμένους ἐν πέτρα ἀντρώδει. 12. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφίσι
 δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διαβῆναι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τοῖς πολεμίοις 20
 ἵππευσι προσβατὸν εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκδύντες δ' ἔφασαν
 ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὥς νευσόμενοι διαβαίνειν·
 πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα·
 καὶ διαβάντες, λαβόντες τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἤκειν. 13. εὐθύς οὖν
 Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐγχεῖν ἐκέ- 25
 λευε καὶ εὐχεσθαι τοῖς φήνασι θεοῖς τά τε ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν
 πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι. σπείσας δ' εὐθύς
 ἦγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται

αἰδοῖα, τά: the genitals, 1
 ἀντρώδης, -ες: cavernous, hollow, 1
 ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 7
 βρέχω: be wet, get wet, 2
 γυμνός, -ή, -όν: naked, unclad, unarmed, 4
 δι-ηγέομαι: to explain, lead through, 2
 ἐγχειρίδιος, -α, -ον: hand-dagger, 1
 ἐγ-χέω: to pour, pour in; fill a cup, 1
 ἐκ-δύνω: to take off, strip; go out, 1
 ἐπι-τελέω: to complete, finish, accomplish, 1
 εὐχόμεαι: to pray, offer prayers, vow, 5
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 7
 θεός, ὁ: a god, divinity, 3

ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 2
 κατα-τίθημι: to set down, deposit, settle, 1
 λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 6
 νεανίσκος, ὁ: a youth, 4
 νέω: to swim, 1
 ὄνειρος, ὀνείρατος, τό: dream, 1
 πόρος, ὁ: a ford, passage, pathway, 2
 προσ-βατός, -ή, -όν: accessible, 2
 πρόσθεν: before, earlier, 3
 σπένδω: to make a treaty, a drink-offering, 5
 σφεῖς: they, 3
 φαίνω: to show; *mid.* appear, seem, 6

19 κατατιθεμένους: *depositing*
 ἰδοῦσι: (*while*)...; dat. pl. pple εἶδον,
 σφίσι: dat. pl. σφεῖς, i.e. Greek soldiers
 20 δόξαι: *it seemed*; aor. inf. in ind. disc.
 ἀσφαλὲς: acc. pred. of inf. εἶμι
 διαβῆναι: explanatory (expegetical) aor.
 inf. διαβαίνω qualifying ἀσφαλὲς
 21 οὐδὲ...τοῖς...ἵππευσι: *not even for*...; dat.
 of interest; οὐδέ is an adverb here
 (δόξαι) εἶναι: (*it seemed*) *to be*
 κατὰ τοῦτο: *at this (point)*; 'over this'
 ἐκδύντες: *that (they) taking off their*
clothes...; i.e. the soldiers, the pples and
 adj. modify the missing acc. subject, which
 is the same as the main subject: therefore,

all the modifiers are attracted into the nom.
 ἔφασαν...ὥς: *they said that*...; the soldiers
 talking to Xenophon are the subject
 22 ὥς...νευσόμενοι: *so that*...; 'so as to...'
 ὥς + fut. pple. expresses purpose
 23 διαβῆναι: *that (they)*...; aor. inf. διαβαίνω
 πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα: *before*...; πρὶν
 governs an inf., here an acc. subj. + aor. inf.
 24 λαβόντες τὰ ἱμάτια: the soldiers stole the
 clothes of the man, woman and children,
 perhaps as proof that the river was fordable
 26 φήνασι...ὀνείρατα...πόρον: dat. pl. aor.
 active pple. φαίνω governing two objects
 27 σπείσας: nom. sg. aor. pple σπένδω
 28 ἦγε: *impf.* ἄγω

ταῦτά. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος σπονδὰς ἐποίει. 14. σπεί- 1
 σαντες δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον συσκευάζεσθαι,
 αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐβουλευόντο ὅπως
 ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαῖεν καὶ τοὺς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶεν καὶ
 ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπίσθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. 15. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς 5
 Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγείσθαι καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ
 τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι,
 τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων διαβαίνειν.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν, ἐπορεύοντο· 16. ἡγοῦντο δ' οἱ νεα-

βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 5
 ἐμ-προσθεν: in front, before, 5
 ἔτι: still, besides, further, 7
 ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ: half, 4
 κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 5
 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 5
 μηδ-είς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 2
 νεανίσκος, ὁ: a youth, 4
 νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 2

ὄχλος, ὁ: a crowd, throng, mob, 4
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7
 πάσχω: to suffer, experience, 3
 σπένδω: to make a treaty, a drink-offering, 5
 σπονδή, ἡ: a drink-offering; truce, treaty, 5
 συγ-καλέω: to call together, assemble, 2
 συσκευάζομαι: to pack up together, prepare, 2
 ὑπο-μένω: to remain, abide, wait up, await, 7

- 1 τ(ὰ) αὐτά: αὐτός in the attribute position means 'same'
 σπείσαντες: aor. ppl. σπένδω
 2 αὐτοί: *they themselves*
 3 ὅπως..ἂν...διαβαῖεν...νικῶεν...πάσχοιεν:
how they might...; clause of effort (object
 clause) usually with fut. or, as here, a
 potential opt. (ἄν + opt.), 3p aor. opt.
 διαβαίνω and pres. opt. νικάω, πάσχω
 4 κάλλιστα: superlative adv. καλῶς, 'well'

- 5 ὑπο τῶν ὀπίσθεν: *because of those...*;
 'at the hands of...' gen. of cause or agent
 ἔδοξεν: *it seemed (best)*
 Χειρίσοφον...διαβαίνειν...: *that...*; ind.
 disc.
 7 τὸ δ' ἥμισυ...διαβαίνειν: *and that...*; ind.
 disc.
 9 καλῶς εἶχεν: ἔχω ('is disposed' or 'holds')
 + adv. is often equiv. to εἰμί + adj.; 3s impf.
 with neuter pl. subject

νίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ 10
 τὴν διάβασιν ὡς τέτταρες στάδιοι. 17. πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν
 ἀντιπαρήσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἱππέων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ
 τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα,
 καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς
 ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε, καὶ 15
 τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν
 ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ οἱ μὲν μάντις
 ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· 18. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐτόξευον καὶ

ἀντι-παρ-έρχομαι: to come along opposite, 1
 ἀπο-δύω: to strip off, drip off, 1
 ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν: left, on the left, 4
 δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side, 5
 διά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: a crossing, 3
 μάντις, ἡ: seer, prophet, 2
 ὄχθη, ἡ: bank (of a river), 4

10 ἐπὶ...: to...
 11 ὡς: nearly...; 'as if' in approximation,
 πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν: gen. abs.
 12 ἀντιπαρήσαν: 3p impf., the enemy stood
 on the opposite side of the river
 κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν: at...
 13 ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα: presented arms; or 'to
 halt under arms,' an idiom with several
 related meanings; aor. mid. inf. τίθημι

παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7
 στεφανόω: to crown, put on a wreath, 1
 σφαγιάζομαι: to sacrifice, slay a victim, 3
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ: post, order, rank; battle array, 7
 τέτταρες, -α: four, 6
 τίθημι: to put, place; set, establish, 3
 τοξεύω: to shoot with the bow, 7

14 στεφανωσάμενος: i.e. on himself; mid.
 [ple; mid. voice is often reflexive in sense
 ἀποδὺς: i.e. his cloak; nom. sg. aor. pple
 ἀποδύω;
 16 ὀρθίους: in columns; i.e. single file
 τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δ': some...and others...
 17 ἑαυτοῦ: i.e. of Cheirisophus
 18 εἰς: near..., at...; 'up to...'

ἔσφενδόνων· ἀλλ' οὐπω ἐξικνούντο· ^{19.} ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ
 σφάγια, ἐπαιάνιζον πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, ²⁰
 συνωλόλυζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν
 ἐταῖραι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. ^{20.} καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε
 καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων
 λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν
 πόρον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, ²⁵
 προσποιούμενος ταύτῃ διαβὰς ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς παρὰ τὸν
 ποταμὸν ἱππέας. ^{21.} οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὀρώντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ
 Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς τὸ ὕδωρ περῶντας, ὀρώντες δὲ τοὺς
 ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ

ἀνα-αλαλάζω: to raise the war-cry, 1
 ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 3
 ἀπο-κλείω: to cut off, shut off, 1
 Ἀρμένιοι, οἱ: Armenian, 3
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 7
 δέιδω: to fear, 5
 ἐκ-βασίς, -εως, ἡ: going out, way out, exit, 5
 ἐμ-βαίνω: to step in, walk in, 2
 ἐμπαλιν: back, backwards; opposite way 1
 ἐξ-ικνέομαι: to arrive at, reach, 3
 ἐταῖρα, ἡ: courtesan, female companion, 2
 εὐ-ζωνος, -ον: well-girded, nimble, active, 3

εὐ-πετής, -ές: easy, without trouble, 2
 κράτος, -εος, τό: strength, power, 3
 οὐ-πω: not yet, 1
 παιανίζω: to sing a paean, 4
 περάω: drive right through, pass, cross, 1
 πόρος, ὁ: a ford, passage, pathway, 2
 προσ-ποιέομαι: pretend; gain, win over, 2
 συν-ολολύζω: to raise a cry together, 1
 σφάγιον, τό: omen, offering, victim, 1
 σφενδονάω: to use the sling, 4
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 5

19 ἔσφενδόνων: ἔσφενδόναον, impf.
 καλὰ: *auspicious, favorable*
 22 ἐνέβαινε: verb agrees with closest subject
 23 τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων: partitive gen. with
 the following superlative
 24 εὐζωνοτάτους: superlative
 ἔθει: impf. θέω
 24 ἀνὰ κράτος: *at full speed; up to full power*
 25 ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον τὴν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν: *to
 the ford at the passage out into the
 mountains of the Armeians*; prepositions in
 the attributive position modifying πόρον ;
 i.e. Xenophon heads to the original
 crossing of the river (IV 3.5-6), where the
 water reached as high as their chests
 ὄρη: ὄρεα, neut. ὄρος

26 προσποιούμενος: i.e. he is trying to draw
 off the enemy from Cheirisophus' crossing
 ταύτῃ: *in this way*; dat. of manner
 διαβάς: nom. sg. aor. pple διαβαίνω
 παρὰ: *along...*
 27 ὀρώντες: pres. pple ὀράω
 τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον...περῶντας: *that
 those...; ind. disc. i.e. those under the
 command of Cheirisophus*
 28 τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα...θέοντας: *that
 those...; ind. disc.*
 29 εἰς τὸ (ἔμπαλιν): i.e. back to the original
 crossing
 δείσαντες: aor. pple δέιδω
 μὴ: *lest...; fearing clause*

ἀποληφθείησαν φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὥς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ 1
 ἄνω ἔκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, ἔτεινον ἄνω
 πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 22. Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἱππέων καὶ
 Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον
 ἐπεὶ ἐώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας, εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ στρα- 5
 τιῶται ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ
 ὄρος. 23. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ διέβη, τοὺς ἱππείας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν,
 εὐθὺς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
 ἐξέβαινεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὀρώντες μὲν

Αἰσχίνης, ὁ: Aeschines, 2

ἀπο-λαμβάνω: to cut off, intercept, 1

ἀπο-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 4

αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 8

βοάω: to shout, cry outloud, 5

διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 3

ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark; turn out, 7

ἐκ-βασίς, -εως, ἡ: going out, way out, exit, 5

κράτος, -εος, τό: strength, power, 3

Λύκιος, ὁ: Lycius, 3

ὄχθη, ἡ: bank (of a river), 4

προσ-ήκω: to come out, be present, 1

συν-εκ-βαίνω: to join in going out, 1

τάξις, -εως, ἡ: unit, squadron; battle array, 7

τείνω: to stretch, extend; exert, hasten 1

1 ἀποληφθείησαν: 3p aor. pass. opt. in the fearing clause

ἀνὰ κράτος: *at full speed*; up to full power

ὥς: *as if*; expresses intention and can be

translated as 'intending' or 'aiming'

τὴν...ἔκβασιν: *the way out up from the river*; gen. governed by ἔκβασιν

2 κατὰ: *over...*

4 ὁ τὴν τάξιν (ἔχων): add pple

5 ἐώρων: ἑώραον, 3p impf. ὀράω

ἀνὰ κράτος: see above

εἶποντο: impf. mid. ἔπομαι

6 ἐβόων: ἐβόασαν; 3p impf. α-contract

μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι: *that they should not...*;

ind. disc. that is a negative command in

direct disc.: μὴ is used instead of οὐ in

wishes and commands; pass. inf.

7 αὖ: *in turn*; i.e. in response

διέβη: 3s aor. διαβαίνω

ἐδίωκεν: *did not try to pursue*; conative impf.

8 κατὰ: *over..., along...*

προσηκούσας: *projecting*

9 ἐπὶ: *against...*

οἱ δὲ ἄνω: *those above*

ὀρώντες: pple

τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἱππέας φεύγοντας, ὀρώντες δ' ὀπλίτας σφίσιν 10
ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα. 24. Ξενοφῶν
δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἑώρα καλῶς γιγνόμενα, ἀπεχώρει τὴν
ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρ-
δοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον καταβαίνοντες ὥς
ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις. 25. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω 15
κατεῖχε, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιώξαι ἔλαβε
τῶν σκευοφόρων τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἐσθῆτά
τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπώματα. 26. καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων

ἀπο-χωρέω: go from, depart, 2
ἐκ-λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 3
ἔκπωμα, -ατος, τό: drinking-cup, 2
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon; attack, 5
ἐπ-δίωκω: to pursue after, 2
ἐπ-τίθημι: to put upon; add; set upon, attack 4
ἐπ-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 1
ἐσθῆς, ἐσθητός, ἡ: clothing, 1

10 τοὺς...φεύγοντας: ind. disc. following
ὀρώντες
ὀπλίτας...ἐπιόντας: see above; pple
ἐπ-έρχομαι
σφίσιν: dat. of compound verb; dat. pl.
σφεῖς
12 τὰ πέραν...γιγνόμενα: *that things across*
(*the river*)...; ind. disc.
ἑώρα: ἑώρα-ε, 3s impf. ὁράω
καλῶς: *well*
τὴν ταχίστην: adverbial acc., translate as a
superlative adverb: ταχίστα
διαβαῖνον: neuter sg. pple
13 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*; καὶ is adverbial
14 φανεροὶ...ἦσαν: *were visibly...*; 'were

κατ-έχω: to hold fast, take possession of, 7
Λύκιος, ὁ: Lycius, 3
πέραν: across, beyond, exceeding (gen), 5
σκευο-φόρον, τό: baggage train, baggage, 2
σφεῖς: they, 3
τελευταίος, -α, -ον: last, final, 6
ὑπο-λείπω: to leave behind; fail, 2

visible'
ὥς ἐπιθησόμενοι: *so that...*; 'so as to...'
ὥς + fut. pple (ἐπιτίθημι) expressing
purpose
15 τοῖς τελευταίοις: i.e. soldiers; dat of
compound verb
τὰ ἄνω: *the heights*; 'things above'
16 ἐπιδιώξαι: aor. act. inf.
ἔλαβε: aor. λαμβάνω
17 τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα: *those things...*; i.e. the
parts of the enemy's baggage train that
were trailing behind; pass. pple
ἐσθητά...καλὴν: *fine clothing*; pl. in sense

καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέβαινε, Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς
 Καρδούχους ἀντία τὰ ὅπλα ἔθετο, καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς 20
 λοχαγοῖς κατ' ἐνωμοτίας ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ
 λόχον, παρ' ἀσπίδα παραγαγόντας τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ φά-
 λαγγοῖς· καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους πρὸς
 τῶν Καρδούχων ἵεναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ
 ποταμοῦ. 27. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὡς ἐώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας 25
 τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους καὶ ὀλίγους ἤδη φαινομένους, θᾶπτον
 δὴ ἐπῆσαν ὠδὰς τινας ἄδοντες. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ

αἰδῶ: to sing, chant, 2

ἀκμή, ἡ: edge, point, critical moment, 1

ἀντίος, -α, -ον: face to face, facing opposite 1

ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 6

ἐνωμοτ-άρχης, -ου, ὁ: squadron-leader, 1

ἐνωμοτία, ἡ: squadron, 2

ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon; attack, 5

θᾶπτον, θᾶπτον: faster, quicker, swifter, 3

καθ-ίστημι: to station, appoint; *intransitive*, stand, 4

οὐραγός, ὁ: leader of the rear guard, 1

ὄχλος, ὁ: a crowd, throng, mob, 4

παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7

παρ-άγω: to lead by, lead alongside, 3

στρέφω: to turn, wheel around, 3

τίθημι: to put, place; set, establish, 3

φαίνω: to show; *mid.* appear, seem, 6

ψιλῶ: to strip bear, 1

ὠδή, ἡ: ode, song, 1

19 ἀκμὴν διέβαινε: *just beginning to cross*;

'just at the point of crossing,' ἀκμή is adverbial acc. ('just at the point' or 'just') with an inchoative impf.

20 ἔθετο: *presented arms*; i.e. stood his ground with shields in front; an idiom with several related meanings; aor. mid. τίθημι

21 κατὰ ἐνωμοτίας: *by squadrons*; 'squadron by squadron' κατὰ is distributive in sense ποιήσασθαι: *that (they) form...*; aor. mid., ἕκαστον ...λόχον is acc. object; the units were in columns when they crossed the river and must now reform into battlelines

22 παρ(ὰ) ἀσπίδα: *along the left*; 'along the shield,' i.e. the direction of the shield when held in the left hand

παραγαγόντας: aor. ppl. modifying the assumed acc. subj. of ποιήσασθαι: λοχαγοὺς

ἐπὶ φάλαγγοις: *into line of battle*

πρὸς: *toward...*; or 'on the side facing toward...'

24 ἵεναι: inf. ἔρχομαι

καταστήσασθαι: *to station, to cause to stand*; aor. mid. οὐραγοὺς is acc. obj.

πρὸς: *toward...*; or 'on the side facing toward...'

25 ὥς: *when, as*

ἐώρων: impf. ὁράω

τοῦ ὄχλου: *of the crowd (of camp-followers)*; gen. of separation

26 θᾶπτον: comparative adv.

27 δῆ: *quite, exceedingly*; strengthening θᾶπτον

δῆ: *quite*; intensive

ἐπῆσαν: impf. ἐπέρχομαι

ἄδοντες: ppl. αἰδῶ

τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, πέμπει παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς 1
 πελταστὰς καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν
 ὃ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ. 28. ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας Ξενοφῶν
 πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει αὐτοῦ μέναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ
 διαβάντας· ὅταν δ' ἄρξωνται αὐτοὶ διαβαίνειν, ἐναντίους 5
 ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν σφῶν ἐμβαίνειν ὡς διαβησομένους, διηγκυλω-
 μένους τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ ἐπιβεβλημένους τοὺς τοξότας·
 μὴ πρόσω δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ προβαίνειν. 29. τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἑαυτῷ
 παρήγγειλεν, ἐπειδὴν σφενδόνῃ ἐξικνῆται καὶ ἀσπίς ψοφῇ,

ἄγγελος, ὁ: messenger, envoy 1
 ἀκοντιστής, ὁ: javelin-thrower, 1
 ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 6
 ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 7
 αὐτοῦ: in that very place, there, 7
 δι-αγκυλῶ: to crook, bend completely, 1
 ἐμ-βαίνω: to step in, walk in, 2
 ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 4
 ἐξ-ικνέομαι: to arrive at, reach, 3
 ἐπειδὴν: whenever, 5
 ἐπι-βάλλω: to shoot at, cast at, 1

ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 5
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7
 πέμπω: send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 7
 προ-βαίνω: to step forward, advance, 1
 πρόσω: forwards into, far from +gen 4
 σφεῖς: they, 3
 σφενδόνῃ, ἡ: sling, stone (from a sling), 2
 σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὁ: slinger, 1
 τοξότης, ὁ: an archer, bowman, 4
 ψοφέω: to make a noise, 1

- 1 τὰ παρ(ὰ) αὐτῷ: *matters on his side;*
 'things beside him' i.e. Cheirisophus' side
 ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε: ἔχω ('is disposed' or
 'hold') + adv. is often equiv. to εἰμί + adj.
 παρὰ: *to (the side of)...*; place to which
 3 ὃ τι ἂν...: *whatever...*; general relative
 clause with ἂν + 3s subj.; neut. acc. ὅστις
 ἰδὼν: aor. pple ὁράω
 4 κελεύει: *orders that they...*; the ind.
 command lasts to the end of 3.28
 αὐτοῦ: *there;* 'in that very place'
 μέναι: aor. inf. μένω
 μὴ διαβάντας: *not crossing;* aor. pple, μὴ
 instead of οὐ in an ind. command
 5 ὅταν...ἄρξωνται: *whenever...*; ἂν + aor.
 subj. in a general temporal clause
 αὐτοί: *(they) themselves;* intensive
 ἐναντίους...ἐμβαίνειν: *to come in opposite*
 6 ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν σφῶν: *on this side and that*

- side of them;* 'from here and from there'
 ὡς διαβησομένους: *as if about to...*; often
 ὡς + pple expresses purpose, but here it is
 the pretense of an action; fut. pple
 διηγκυλωμένους: *holding...by the thong;*
 'bending,' modifies ἀκοντιστὰς
 7 ἐπιβεβλημένος: *setting (arrow) upon*
 (*string*); i.e. with bow drawn; pf. mid.pple
 ἐπιβάλλω modifying τοξότας
 7 μὴ...προβαίνειν: *that they not...*; ind.
 command; expressing a wish, hence μὴ;
 the main verb remains κελεύει above
 8 τοῖς παρ(ὰ) ἑαυτῷ: *those (men) with*
him; i.e. under his charge
 9 παρήγγειλεν: aor. παραγγέλλω
 ἐπειδὴν...ἐξικνῆται...ψοφῇ: *whenever...*;
 3s pres. subj. in a general temporal clause

παιανίσαντας θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπειδὰν δ' ἀναστρέ- 10
ψωσιν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημήνη
τὸ πολεμικόν, ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ ἡγείσθαι μὲν τοὺς
οὐραγούς, θεῖν δὲ πάντας καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι τάχιστα ἦ
ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν, ὥς μὴ ἐμποδίζεν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι
οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν γένηται. 15
30. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὀρώντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς (πολλοὶ
γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων ὥχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι οἱ μὲν
ὑποζυγίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, οἱ δ' ἑταιρῶν), ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέ-

ἀνα-στρέφω: to turn off (in flight), 2
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent; noble, 2
δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: spearshaft; pole, stem, 4
ἐμ-ποδίζω: to hinder, impede, 1
ἐπειδάν: whenever, 5
ἐπί-κειμαι: set upon; press upon, attack, 3
ἐπι-μέλ(ε)ομαι: to care for, look after (gen) 3
ἑταῖρα, ἡ: courtesan, female companion, 2
λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 6
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 7

οὐραγός, ὁ: leader of the rear guard, 1
παιανίζω: to sing a paean, 4
πέραν: across, beyond, exceeding (gen), 5
πολεμικός, -ή, -όν: (the signal) of war, 1
σαλπικτής, ὁ: trumpeter, 2
σημαίνω: to show, indicate, give a signal, 3
σκευή, ἡ: attire, apparel; equipment, 2
τάξις, -εως, ἡ: unit, squadron; battle array, 7
τάττω: post, station, arrange, order, 6

10 θεῖν: inf. θέω

ἐπειδάν ἀναστρέψωσιν...σημήνη: general temporal clause with 3p and 3s aor. subj.

12 τὸ πολεμικόν: *the war (charge)*; i.e. in order to deceive the enemy

ἐπὶ δόρυ: *to the right*; 'to the spear,' i.e. the direction of the spear when held in hand; compare παρὰ ἀσπίδα, 'to the left'
ἡγείσθαι: *took the lead*; οὐραγούς is subj.

13 ὅτι τάχιστα: ὥς or ὅτι + superlative is translated as 'as...as possible'

ἦ...εἶχεν: *in which way each (soldier) held ranks*; i.e. the soldiers had to maintain ranks; relative clause, dat. of manner

14 ὥς μὴ...: *so as not...*; result clause, just as ὥστε, ὥς governs an inf.

ὅτι... ἔσοιτο: (*he said*) *that...*; ind. disc. with fut. opt. εἰμί; in ind. disc. a fut. opt. replaces fut. ind. in secondary seq.

15 ἄριστος: nom. predicate of ἔσοιτο
ὃς ἂν...: *whoever...*; general relative clause with ἂν + aor. subj.

ἐν τῷ πέραν: *on the other side*

17 καί: *even*

τῶν...τεταγμένων: *of those...*; pf. pass. pple τάττω, partitive gen. with πολλοὶ

ὥχοντο: impf. οἴχομαι

οἱ μὲν...οἱ δέ... οἱ δέ...: *some...others...still others*; the genitives are objects of the pple ἐπιμελόμενοι

18 ἐνταῦθα δὴ: *just then, exactly then*

ἐπέκειντο: impf. ἐπείκειμαι

κειντο θρασέως καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. 31. οἱ
 δὲ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὥρμησαν δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ 20
 δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥπλισμένοι ὥς μὲν ἐν τοῖς
 ὄρεσιν ἱκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ
 τὸ εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἱκανῶς. 32. ἐν τούτῳ σημαίνει ὁ
 σαλπικτής· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ἔφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θάττον,
 οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τάναντία στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ 25
 ὅτι τάχιστα. 33. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μὲν τινες αἰσθόμενοι
 πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τοξεύοντες ὀλίγους
 ἔτρωσαν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ πέραν ὄντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔτι

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 4
 δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 7
 δρόμος, ὁ: run, running, flight; race course, 5
 ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 4
 ἐπι-τρέχω: to run at, run against, 1
 ἔτι: still, besides, further, 7
 θάττων, θάττον: faster, quicker, swifter, 3
 θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: bold, spirited, 1
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 4
 ὀπλίζω: to make ready, arm, equip, 2
 ὀρμάω: to set in motion, set out, begin, 2

παιανίζω: to sing a paean, 4
 πέραν: across, beyond, exceeding (gen), 5
 σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ὁ: war-trumpet, 4
 σημαίνω: to show, indicate, give a signal, 3
 στρέφω: to turn, wheel around, 3
 σφενδονάω: to use the sling, 3
 τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 2
 τοξεύω: to shoot with the bow, 7
 τρέχω: to run, 3
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: hand, 2

19 σφενδονᾶν: α-contract inf.
 20 δρόμῳ: in a run; not 'in flight,' dat. of manner
 ἐπὶ...: against...
 οἱ δὲ: and they; i.e. the enemies
 21 ἐδέξαντο: aor. δέχομαι, i.e. they did not stay and fight
 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact
 ἦσαν ὥπλισμένοι: periphrastic plpf. pass. (pf. pple and impf. εἰμί)
 ὥς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν...οὐχ ἱκανῶς: sufficiently so as to run at and flee in the mountains but not sufficiently so as to engage (the enemy) hand-to-hand; this is a very elliptical clause of comparison introduced by ὥς; ἱκανῶς modifies ἦσαν ὥπλισμένοι; πρὸς + articular inf. often means 'with regard to' or can be left untranslated

23 ἐν τούτῳ: in this (moment); 'meanwhile'
 σημαίνει: i.e. gives the signal for charge
 24 πολὺ: far; adverbial acc. (acc. of extent in degree) with comparative adv. θάττον
 25 τὰ (ἐ)ναντία: the opposite direction; 'the opposite turn,' inner acc.
 26 ὅτι τάχιστα: ὥς or ὅτι + superlative is translated as 'as...as possible'
 τῶν δὲ πολεμίων: among...; partitive gen.
 οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ πολλοί: some...many others
 αἰσθόμενοι: perceiving that the Greeks were crossing
 27 ἔδραμον: aor. τρέχω
 ἔτρωσαν: aor. τιτρώσκω
 28 καὶ πέραν...Ἑλλήνων: even though...; gen. abs., concessive in sense; καὶ is adverbial, pple εἰμί

φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες. 34. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες ἀνδριζόμενοι 1
καὶ προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ προϊόντες ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενο-
φῶντος διέβησαν πάλιν· καὶ ἐτρώθησάν τινες καὶ τούτων.

1. ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας
ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίον ἅπαν καὶ λείους γη- 5
λόφους οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας· οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς
τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρ-
δούχους. 2. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο κώμην μεγάλη τε ἦν καὶ
βασιλῆιον εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς πλείσταις οἰκίαις

ἀνδρίζω: to behave as a man, 1

ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 3

Ἀρμενία, ἡ: Armenia, 6

βασιλῆιον, τό: palace, 2

γηλόφος, ὁ: mound, hill, 1

ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 7

τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 2

καιρός, ὁ: time, right moment, due measure, 2

λείος, -η, -ον: smooth, level, flat, 1

μείων, μείον: smaller, less, of lesser value, 2

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 5

πέντε: five, 4

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, 3

πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war, 2

προ-έρχομαι: to go forth, advance, 4

πρόσω: forwards, far from +gen, 4

σατράπης, ὁ: satrap, 2

συν-τάττω: to post/marshall together, order 3

τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 2

ὑπ-αντάω: to come to, meet; reply, 1

ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; coming after, 1

1 φανοροὶ ἦσαν: *were visibly*; 'were visible'

οἱ δὲ...: *and those*; i.e. the enemy

2 προσωτέρω: comparative adv.

τοῦ καιροῦ: *than due measure*; gen. of comparison

προϊόντες: pple προ-έρχομαι
ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενοφῶντος: *behind the men accompanying Xenophon*;

comparative adv. and gen. of comparison

3 διέβησαν: aor. διαβαίνω

ἐτρώθησαν: 3p aor. pass. τιτρώσκω

καὶ: *also*

τούτων: partitive gen.

4 ἀμφὶ: an approximation of time, not place
ἡμέρας: partitive gen.

5 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.

πορεύομαι; translate actively

πεδίον ἅπαν...γηλόφους: *over...*; acc. of extent (S1581)

6 μείον: comparative adverb

ἦσαν: *there were*

7 τοὺς πρὸς...: *against...*; prepositional phrase in the attributive position modifying πολέμους

8 εἰς...ἦν...κώμην: *the town to which...*; 'to which town...', a relative clause with a relative adj.; ἡ κώμη the subject of the main verb has been attracted into the acc. case of the relative pronoun

σατράπῃ: *for...*; dat. interest

ἐπὶ: *upon...*; dat. of place where

τύρσεις ἐπήσαν· 3. ἐπιτήδεια δ' ἦν δαψιλῇ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπο- 10
 ρεύθησαν σταθμούς· δύο παρασάγγας δέκα μέχρι ὑπερήλθον
 τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
 σταθμούς· τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν
 ποταμόν. οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ· κῶμαι δὲ
 πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμόν ἦσαν. 4. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία 15
 ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς ἑσπέραν. ὑπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς Τιρίβαζος,
 ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γενόμενος, καὶ ὁπότε παρείη, οὐδεὶς
 ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαλλεν. 5. οὗτος προσ-

Ἀρμενία, ἡ: Armenia, 6
 δαψιλῆς, -ές: abundant, plentiful, 2
 δέκα: ten, 7
 ἔπ-ειμι: to be upon, be on, 1
 ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening, 2
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 3
 μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
 πάρ-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 4
 πεντε-καί-δεκα: fifteen, 5
 περὶ: around, about, concerning, 7

10 ἐπήσαν: impf. ἔπ-ειμι
 δαψιλῇ: δαψιλέ-α; neuter pl.
 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. deponent
 πορεύομαι; translate actively
 11 σταθμούς...παρασάγγας: *for...for...*;
 acc. of extent; σταθμός refers to a day's
 travel; παρασάγγας refers to the actual
 distance
 ὑπερήλθον: aor. ὑπ-έρχομαι
 12 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 13 σταθμούς...παρασάγγας: *for...for...*;
 acc. of extent
 ἐπὶ: to...
 16 ἐκαλεῖτο: impf. pass. καλέω

πηγῇ, ἡ: spring (of a river), 4
 προσ-ελαύνω: to drive to, ride to, 1
 Τηλεβόας, ὁ: Teleboas river, 1
 Τίγρης, Τίγρητος, ὁ: Tigris river, 4
 Τιρίβαζος, ὁ: Tiribazus (person), 6
 τόπος, ὁ: a place, region, 3
 τύρσις, -εως, ἡ: tower, 1
 ὑπ-αρχος, ὁ: sub-commander, lieutenant, 1
 ὑπερ-έρχομαι: to go past, pass over, 1
 φίλος, -α, -ον: friendly, dear; friend, kin, 1

Ἀρμενία...ἡ πρὸς ἑσπέραν: *Western
 Armenia*; 'Armenia toward the evening
 (sun),' nom. pred.
 αὐτῆς: *of this place*
 17 ὁ...γενόμενος: *a (man)...*; with aor. pple
 in apposition to Τιρίβαζος
 βασιλεῖ: βασιλέ-ι, dat. sg. βασιλεύς with
 the special adj. or noun φίλος
 ὁπότε παρείη: *whenever...*; past general
 temporal clause with 3s opt. πάρειμι
 18 βασιλέα: acc.
 ἀνέβαλλεν: *would help...mount*; 'put
 upon,' iterative impf

ἤλασεν ἱππέας ἔχων, καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν ὅτι βού-
 λοιτο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν 20
 ἀκοῦσαι· καὶ προσελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἡρώτων τί θέλει.
 6. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιτο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς
 Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς οἰκίας λαμβάνειν
 τε τὰπιτῆδεια ὅσων δέοιντο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
 καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις. 25

7. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς διὰ πεδίου
 παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα· καὶ Τιρίβαζος παρηκολούθει ἔχων
 τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἀπέχων ὥς δέκα σταδίου· καὶ ἀφίκοντο
 εἰς βασιλεια καὶ κώμας περίξ πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτη-
 δείων μεστάς. 8. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς 30

ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 1
 ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5
 βασιλεια, τό: palace, 2
 δέκα: ten, 7
 δέομαι: to lack, be in need of (gen.), 2
 δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 5
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, wealth, strength, 2
 ἐπ-ήκοος, -ον: within ear-shot or hearing, 1
 ἑρμηνεύς, ὁ: an interpreter, 4

μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled, filled full, 1
 μή-τε: and not, 2
 πεντε-καί-δεκα: fifteen, 5
 περίξ: round about, all round (gen) 1
 προ-πέμπω: to send forth, send before, 1
 σπένδω: to make a treaty, a drink-offering, 5
 στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, take a position, 4
 Τιρίβαζος, ὁ: Tiribazus (person), 6

19 προσήλασεν: aor. προσελάυνω (ελα-) ὅτι βούλοιτο: *that...*; ind. disc. with opt. in secondary seq.
 20 διαλεχθῆναι: aor. pass. dep. inf. τοῖς ἄρχουσι: *with the leaders* ἔδοξεν: *it seemed best*
 21 προσελθόντες: aor. ppl. προσέρχομαι ἡρώτων: ἡρώταον, 3p impf. ἐρωτάω τί (ἐ)θέλει: ind. question
 22 ὁ δὲ: *and he* ὅτι...βούλοιτο: *that...*; opt., secondary seq. σπείσασθαι: aor. mid. σπένδω ἐφ' ᾧ: *on the condition that...*; ἐπ(ι) ᾧ; in the context of forming a pact or treaty μήτε...ἀδικεῖν μήτε...καίειν...: *that he himself neither... nor...; ind. disc.*
 23 ἐκείνους: *nor that...*; i.e. Greeks

24 λαμβάνειν τε: (*but*) *that they take...*; not a prohibition but what is allowed in the pact τὰ (ἐ)πιτήδεια δέοιντο: *they needed*; + gen. of separation; pres. opt. mid., past general relative clause ἔδοξε: *seemed best*; neuter pl. subject
 25 ἐσπείσαντο: aor. mid. σπένδω ἐπὶ τούτοις: *on these terms/conditions*
 26 ἐπορεύθησαν: aor. pass. dep. πορεύομαι σταθμούς...παρασάγγας...: *for...for...*; acc. of extent παρηκολούθει: impf.
 28 τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν: *his own force*; i.e. troops under his own command ὥς: *nearly*; 'as if,' in approximation
 29 εἰς βασιλεια: neut. pl., but translate as sg.
 30 στρατοπεδευομένων αὐτῶν: gen. abs.

νυκτὸς χιὼν πολλή· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε διασκηνῆσαι τὰς τάξεις ¹
 καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς κατὰ τὰς κώμας· οὐ γὰρ ἐώρων πολέ-
 μιον οὐδένα καὶ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
 χιόνος. ⁹ ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ,
 ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, οἶνους παλαιούς εὐώδεις, ἀσταφίδας, ὄσπρια ⁵
 παντοδαπά. τῶν δὲ ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρα-
 τοπέδου ἔλεγον ὅτι κατίδοιεν νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντα.
¹⁰ ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν,
 ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συνήλθον·

ἀπο-σκεδαννυμι: to scatter abroad, disperse, 2
 ἀσταφίς, -ίδος, ἡ: dried grapes, raisons, 1
 δια-σκηνέω: to disperse to quarters/tents, 3
 εὐ-ωδής, -ές: sweet-smelling, fragrant, 1
 ἔω-θεν: from dawn, in the morning, 1
 ἱερεῖον, τό: (sacrificial) victim, animal, 1
 καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 7
 νύκτωρ: at night, 2
 οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 5
 ὄσπριον, τό: pulse, legume, 2

παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old, aged, ancient, 2
 παντο-δαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind or sort, 1
 πλῆθος, ἡ: crowd, multitude; size, 4
 πυρά, -ών, τά: watch-fire, 6
 σῖτος, ὁ: grain, bread, food, 1
 συν-άγω: bring together, collect, gather, 2
 συν-έρχομαι: come together, meet in battle 3
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ: unit, squadron; battle array, 7
 φαίνω: to show; *mid.* appear, seem, 6

- 1 τῆς νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. of time within
 ἔδοξε: *it seemed (best)*
 διασκηνῆσαι: aor. inf.
 2 κατὰ...: *through...*; or 'over...' κατὰ is
 distributive in sense
 2 ἐώρων: 3p impf. ὁράω
 3 εἶναι: inf. εἶμι
 5 ἱερεῖα...παντοδαπά: in apposition to τὰ
 ἐπιτήδεια
 6 τινὲς: *some*; indefinite

- 7 ὅτι κατίδοιεν: *that they...*; ind. disc. with
 aor. opt. καθοράω in secondary seq.
 πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντα: ind. disc. with
 pres. pple
 8 δὴ: *then, accordingly*; inferential
 διασκηνοῦν: neuter sg. pple διασκηνέω
 assume neut. τὸ στράτευμα
 9 συναγαγεῖν: aor. inf.
 συνήλθον: aor. συνέρχομαι

καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει διαιθριάζειν. 11. νυκτερευόντων δ' αὐτῶν 10
 ἐνταῦθα ἐπιπίπτει χιών ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυσσε καὶ τὰ
 ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια
 συνεπόδισεν ἢ χιών· καὶ πολλὸς ὄκνος ἦν ἀνίστασθαι· κατα-
 κειμένων γὰρ ἀλεεινὸν ἦν ἢ χιών ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα ὅτῳ μὴ
 παραρρυνεῖ. 12. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς ἀναστὰς 15
 σχίζει ξύλα, τάχ' ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἐκείνου ἀφελό-
 μενος ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ
 ἔκαιον καὶ ἐχρίοντο· 13. πολλὸν γὰρ ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκετο χρίμα, ᾧ

ἀλεεινός, -ή, -όν: warm, hot, open to the sun 1
 ἄπλετος, -ον: boundless, immense, 1
 ἀπο-κρύπτω: to conceal, hide, 1
 ἀφ-αἰρέω: to take away from, remove, 2
 γυμνός, -ή, -όν: naked, unclad, unarmed, 4
 δι-αιθριάζω: to be clear (i.e. the weather), 1
 ἐπι-πίπτω: to fall upon, attack, 3
 εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 4
 κατα-κείμαι: to lie down, lie outstretched, 2
 νυκτερεύω: to pass the night, 2

10 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*

νυκτερευόντων...αὐτῶν: gen. abs.

11 καὶ...καὶ: *both...and*

13 ἀνίστασθαι: *to stand up*; explanatory (epexegetical) inf. following ὄκνος

κατακειμένων: (*while the men*) *were lying down*; gen. absolute with missing noun

14 ἀλεεινόν: *warm*; predicate of ἦν

ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα: fem. sg. pf. pple ἐπιπίπτω

ὅτῳ: *for whomever (the snow)...*; dat. sg.

ὅστις: general relative clause with 3s aor.

pass. opt.

παραρρέω in secondary seq.; add a subject

ξύλον, τό: wood, timber, firewood, 3

ὄκνος, ὁ: hesitation; reluctance, shrinking, 1

ὅστις, ἧτις, ὃ τι: whoever, which-, whatever, 4

παρα-ρρέω: flow or slip past, fall off, 1

συμ-ποδίζω: to impede, entangle, 1

σχίζω: to split, cleave, 1

τάχα: presently, quickly; perhaps, 2

τολμάω: to dare, venture, undertake, 1

χρίμα, τό: ointment, oil for anointing, 1

χρίω: to anoint with oil, smear oil, 1

15 γυμνός: i.e. without his cloak

ἀναστὰς: nom. sg. aor. pple ἀν-ίστημι

16 τις καὶ ἄλλος: *someone else also*

ἐκείνου: *from that one*; i.e. Xenophon, gen. of separation

ἀφελόμενος: supply ξύλα as object, aor.

mid. ἀφαιρέω; someone else took over the task from Xenophon

17 ἐκ τούτου: *as a result of this*

καὶ: *else*

18 ἐχρίοντο: mid. voice, as here, is reflexive in sense

ᾧ: *which*; dat. obj. of special verb

ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου, σύειον καὶ σησάμινον καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον
ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν καὶ τερμίνθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων 20
καὶ μύρον ἠύρισκετο.

14. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνιτέον εἶναι [τὰς κώμας]
εἰς στέγας. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ
καὶ ἡδονῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ

ἀμυγδάλινος, -η, -ον: of an almond, 1
ἀντ': instead of, in place of (+ gen.), 3
δια-σκηνητέος, -ον: to be dispersed to tents, 1
ἐλαίον, τό: olive oil, 1
εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 4
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 1
κραυγή, ἡ: shouting, crying, screaming, 3

μύρον, τό: a fragrant oil; perfume, 1
πικρός, -ά, -όν: sharp, keen, bitter, 1
σησάμινος, -η, -ον: made of sesame, 1
στέγη, ἡ: roof, roofed place, room, shelter, 2
σύειος, -α, -ον: of swine, of a pig, 1
τερμίνθινος, -η, -ον: of the terebinth tree, 1
χράομαι: use, employ, enjoy, indulge (dat) 6

19 ἐχρῶντο: impf. χράομαι + dat.
σύειον...τερμίνθινον: supply neuter sg.
χρῖμα, 'ointment,' from above
σύειον: i.e. lard
ἀμυγδάλινον ἐκ...πικρῶν: of the bitter
almond; 'of almonds from the bitter parts'
20 τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων: i.e. sesame, etc.;
αὐτός in the attributive position means
'same'
μύρον: a fragrant oil; as opposed to an oil
just for anointing the skin
22 διασκηνητέον εἶναι: that (they) must...; 'it
is to be...(by them)' impersonal verbal adj.

+ inf. εἰμί expressing necessity; we often
translate this construction in the active
voice with the modal verb 'must'
[τὰς κώμας]: The editor suggests that this
is interpolated (inserted) and can be
omitted from translation.
23 εἰς στέγας: into shelters
ἐνθα δὴ: just then, exactly then
24 ἦσαν: impf. ἔρχομαι
ἐπὶ: to...
ὅσοι δὲ: as many (soldiers) as...; the
antecedent is missing

ὅτε τὸ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν τὰς οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν ὑπὸ ἀτασθα- 1
 λίας, δίκην ἐδίδοσαν κακῶς σκηνοῦντες. 15. ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν
 νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην Τημνίτην ἄνδρας δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα
 ἔφασαν οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ
 ἐδόκει καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη ἀληθεῦσαι τοιαῦτα, τὰ ὄντα τε 5
 ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. 16. πορευθεῖς δὲ τὰ μὲν
 πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα δὲ συλλαβὼν ἦκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα
 τόξον Περσικὸν καὶ φαρέτραν καὶ σάγαριν οἶαν περ καὶ <αἱ>
 Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. 17. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ποδαπὸς εἶη, Πέρσης

ἀληθεύω: speak the truth, speak truthfully, 1
 Ἀμαζόνες, αἱ: Amazons, 1
 ἀπο-σκεδαννυμι: to scatter abroad, disperse, 2
 ἀτασθαλία, ἡ: recklessness, arrogance, 1
 Δημοκράτης, ὁ: Democrates, 1
 δίκη, ἡ: justice, penalty; lawsuit, trial, 1
 ἐμ-πίμπρημι: to burn; kindle, set on fire, 1
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 7
 καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 7
 κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 5
 οἷοσπερ, -α, -ον: which very sort, 1
 ὅτε: when, at some time, 3
 πέμπω: send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 7

- 1 τὸ πρότερον: adverbial acc.
 ἀπῆσαν: impf. ἀπέρχομαι
 ἐνέπρησαν: aor. ἐμ-πίμπρημι
 ὑπὸ: because of...; gen. of cause
- 2 δίκην ἐδίδοσαν: impf. δίδωμι, this idiom
 means 'pay the penalty'
 κακῶς σκηνοῦντες: by...; causal pple
 explaining the nature of the penalty
- 3 νυκτὸς: during...; gen. of time within
 δόντες: i.e. to Democrates; aor. pple
 δίδωμι; he was in charge of a few men
 ὄρη: ὄρε-α, neut. pl. ὄρος
 ἔνθα: where...; relative clause
- 4 ἔφασαν: aor. φημί
 καθορᾶν: that (they)...; ind. disc.
 α-contract inf.
 οὗτος: i.e. Democrates
- 5 καί: also; adverb
 πρότερον: comparative adverb

Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ: a Persian, 1
 Περσικός, -ή, -όν: Persian, 4
 ποδαπός, -ή, -όν: from what country? 1
 πρότερος, -α, -ον: before, in front of; earlier 2
 πυρά, -ῶν, τά: watch-fire, 6
 σάγαρις, ἡ: axe, single-edged axe, 1
 σκηνέω: to encamp, bivouac, set up tents, 5
 συλ-λαμβάνω: to catch, gather; help, 1
 Τημνίτης, -ου ὁ: of Temnus, 1
 τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οῦτο: such, this sort, 3
 τόξον, τό: bow, 4
 φαρέτρα, ἡ: quiver, 1

- ἀληθεύσαι: aor. inf.
 πολλὰ τοιαῦτα: acc. obj. or inner acc.
 τὰ ὄντα: what is the case; 'things being
 (the case)' i.e. true, a common translation
 for εἰμί, all in apposition to τοιαῦτα
- 6 ὡς: as
 τὰ μὴ ὄντα: what is...; see above; μὴ
 indicates that the pple is conditional: 'thing
 (if) not being (the case)'
 πορευθεῖς: nom. sg. aor. pass. dep. pple
 πορεύομαι: translate as active
 - 7 οὐκ ἔφη: he said that...not, or 'he denied'
 impf. φημί
 ἰδεῖν: aor. inf. ὁράω
 ἄνδρα: a non-Greek
 συλλαβών: catching; aor. pple
 ἄγων: leading; i.e. to the camp
 - 9 ἐρωτώμενος: pres. passive pple
 εἶη: opt. εἰμί in an ind. question

μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατο- 10
πέδου, ὅπως ἐπιτήδεια λάβοι. οἱ δὲ ἡρώτων αὐτὸν τὸ
στράτευμα ὅπόσον τε εἴη καὶ ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. 18. ὁ δὲ
εἶπεν ὅτι Τιρίβαζος εἴη ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ
μισθοφόρους Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν 15
ἔφη ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς ἥπερ
μοναχῇ εἴη πορεία, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιθησόμενον τοῖς Ἑλλησιν.
19. ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε τὸ στράτευμα συν-
αγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας καταλιπόντες καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ

δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, wealth, strength, 2
ἐπι-τίθημι: to put upon; add; set upon, attack 4
μισθο-φορός, ὁ: mercenary, serving for hire, 2
μοναχός, -ή, -όν: alone, single, solitary, 1
ὅπόσος, -α, -ον: as much, many, or great as, 2
ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 4
παρασκευάζω: to prepare, get ready, 4
πορεία, ἡ: way, march, journey, 5

στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, take a position, 4
σὺλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5
συν-άγω: bring together, collect, gather, 2
Τάοχος, -η, -ον: Taochian, 5
Τιρίβαζος, ὁ: Tiribazus (person), 6
ὑπερ-βολή, ἡ: crossing, mtn. pass; excess, 6
φύλαξ, -ακος, ὁ: guard, sentinel, protector, 4
Χάλυψ, -υβος, ὁ: Chalybian, 4

10 ἔφη εἶναι: *he claimed to...*; i.e the captive,
inf. εἰμί

πορεύεσθαι δ': *and that (he)...*; ind. disc.

11 ὅπως...λάβοι: *so that...might...*; purpose,
aor. opt. λαμβάνω in secondary seq.

ἡρώτων: ἠρώταον 3p impf. ἔρωτάω

αὐτὸν τὸ στράτευμα: proleptic, treat this
acc. as the subject of the following ind.
question

12 ὅπόσον...εἴη: ind. question with opt. εἰμί
replacing indicative in secondary seq.

ἐπὶ τίνι (τὸ στράτευμα εἴη) συνειλεγμένον:
for what (purpose) it had...; ind. question,
with periphrastic plpf. pass. opt. συλλέγω
(pf. pass. pple + opt. εἰμί): in secondary
seq.: translate as plpf. pass.

13 ὅτι (τὸ στράτευμα) εἴη: *that (the army)*
was...; ind. disc. with opt. in secondary seq.
Τιρίβαζος and the other names are nom.

predicate

13 τήν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν: *his own force*; i.e.
military force

14 παρασκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν: *that he...*;
ind. disc. αὐτὸν (Tiribazus) is acc. subj.

15 ὡς...ἐπιθησόμενον: *so that...*; 'so as
going to...' , ὡς + fut. pple expressing
purpose, ἐπιτίθημι
ἐπὶ: *upon...*

ἥπερ...εἴη πορεία: *by which way...*, *in*
which way...

16 ἐνταῦθα: i.e. ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
τοῖς Ἑλλησιν: *against...*, *on...*; dat. of
compound verb

17 ἀκούσασι: dat pl. aor. pple

ταῦτα: object of ἀκούσασι

ἔδοξε: *it seemed best*

καταλιπόντες: aor. pple καταλείπω

τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες
 ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἄνθρωπον. 20. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ 20
 ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προϊόντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον
 οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ
 στρατόπεδον. 21. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον οὐχ
 ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὁμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν
 βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τιρι- 25
 βάζου ἐάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλῖναι ἀργυρόποδες καὶ ἐκπώματα
 καὶ οἱ ἀρτοκόποι καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόοι φάσκοντες εἶναι. 22. ἐπειδὴ

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 6
 ἀνα-κράζω: to cry out, shout, 3
 ἀργυρό-πους, -ποδος, ὁ, ἡ: of silver feet, 1
 ἀρτο-κόπος, ὁ: baker, 1
 βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 7
 εἴκοσι: twenty, 5
 ἔκπωμα, -ατος, τό: drinking-cup, 2
 θόρυβος, ὁ: din, noise, uproar, 3
 καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 7
 κλίνη, ἡ: couch; bed, 1
 οἰνο-χόος, ὁ: wine-pourer, cupbearer, 1

ὁμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 3
 προ-έρχομαι: to go forth, advance, 4
 σκηνή, ἡ: tent, 1
 Σοφαίνετος, ὁ: Sophaenetus, 1
 Στυμφάλιος, -η, -ον: of Stymphalos (city), 4
 Τίριβας, ὁ: Tiribazus (person), 6
 ὑπερ-βάλλω: to pass over, exceed, 5
 ὑπο-μένω: to remain, abide, wait up, await, 7
 φάσκω: say, claim, speak, 2

19 στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι...Στυφάλιον:

*Sophaenetus the Stymphalian as general
 over those remaining; dat. pl. pple μένω*

20 ἡγεμόνα: *as guide*, acc. apposition

ἀλόντα: acc. sg. aor. pple ἀλίσκομαι

ὑπερέβαλλον: *began to...*; inchoative
 impf. προ-έρχομαι

21 προϊόντες: pple προ-έρχομαι

κατιδόντες: aor. pple καθοράω

22 ἔμειναν: aor. μένω

ἀνακραγόντες: aor. pple ἀνακράζω

ἐπὶ: *upon...*, *against...*; i.e. the enemy

camp

24 καὶ: *actually, in fact*; adv.

ἀπέθανον: aor. ἀποθνήσκω

25 ἤλωσαν: 3p aor. ἀλίσκομαι (Ionic 2nd aor.

ἤλων, not Attic aor. below)

εἰς: *nearly*; 'up to' in approximation

ἐάλω: 3s aor. ἀλίσκομαι (Attic 2nd aor.

ἐάλων, note Ionic aor. above)

26 ἐν αὐτῇ: *in it*; i.e. the fem. σκηνή

27 οἱ...φάσκοντες: *those claiming...*; with
 nom. pred.

δὲ ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς 1
 ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μή τις ἐπίθεσις
 γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι
 τῇ σάλπιγγι ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ στρα-
 τόπεδον. 5

1. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἐδόκει πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπη δύναιτο
 τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ συλλεγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν καὶ κατα-
 λαβεῖν τὰ στενά. συσκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ
 χιόνος πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν

ἀνα-καλέω: to call up, call back, 1
 αὐθ-ἡμερος, -ον: on the same day, 2
 ἐπι-θεσις, ἡ: attack, setting upon, 1
 ὅπη: where; in what way, how, 3
 πορευτέος, -ον: to be travelled, 2

πυνθάνομαι: learn (by inquiry or hearsay), 2
 σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ὁ: war-trumpet, 4
 συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5
 συσκευάζομαι: to pack up together, prepare, 2
 ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 5

- 1 ἐπύθοντο: aor. πυνθάνομαι
 2 ἀπιέναι: inf. ἀπέρχομαι
 τὴν ταχίστην: adverbial acc., superlative
 μή...γένοιτο: *lest...*; fearing clause with
 aor. opt. in secondary seq.
 3 τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις: *for those...*; dat. of
 interest, pf. pass. pple κατα-λείπω
 4 τῇ σάλπιγγι: dat. of means
 ἀπῆσαν: impf. ἀπέρχομαι
 6 τῇ ὑστεραία (ἡμέρᾳ): *on...*; dat. time when
 πορευτέον εἶναι: *that (they) must...*; 'that it
 is to be...(by them),' impersonal verbal adj.

- + εἰμί expressing necessity. It is often
 translated in the active with modal verb
 'must.'
 ὅπη δύναιτο τάχιστα: *in whatever*
way...; general relative clause with opt. in
 secondary sequence
 7 πρὶν ἢ: *before*; 'earlier than'
 συλλεγῆναι...καταλαβεῖν: *the army (of*
the enemy)...; aor. infis. governed by ἐδόκει
 στράτευμα is acc. subj.
 9 ἡγεμόνας πολλούς: obj. of ἔχοντες

ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τιρίβαζος 10
κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. 2. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς
ἐρήμους τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην
ποταμόν, καὶ διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν.
3. ἐλέγοντο δ' οὐδὲ πηγαὶ πρόσω εἶναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο
διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας 15
†πεντεκαίδεκα†. ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος
βορρᾶς ἐναντίος ἔπνει παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα καὶ
πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 4. ἔνθα δὴ τῶν μάντεών τις εἶπε

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind, 2

ἀπο-καίω: blast, freeze or burn off, shrivel, 1

βορρᾶς (βορέας), ὁ: north (wind), Boreas, 1

βρέχω: be wet, get wet, 2

ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 4

ἐπι-τίθημι: to put upon; add; set upon, attack 4

ἐρήμος, -ον: deserted, desolate, 4

Εὐφρήτης, ὁ: Euphrates, 2

κατα-στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, 1

μάντις, ἡ: seer, prophet, 2

μέλλω: to be about to, intend to, 2

ὀμφαλός, ὁ: navel, middle, center, 1

παντά-πασι: all in all, altogether, entirely, 3

πεντε-καί-δεκα: fifteen, 5

πηγή, ἡ: spring, source (of a river), 4

πήγνυμι: to stick, freeze, 1

πνέω: to blow; breathe, 1

πρόσω: forwards into, far from +gen 4

Τιρίβαζος, ὁ: Tiribazus (person), 6

τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 4

ὑπερ-βάλλω: to pass over, exceed, 5

χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, harsh, harmful, 3

10 ἐφ' ᾧ: upon which; ἐπ(ι) ᾧ

11 ἐπορεύθησαν: aor. pass. dep. πορεύομαι;
translate in the active

σταθμούς... παρασάγγας: for...for...; acc.
of extent

14 οὐδὲ πρόσω: also not far away; predicate
after inf. εἶμι; οὐδὲ, 'also not,' is an adv.

16 †πεντεκαίδεκα†: A obelus (†) indicates
that the word or clause is plainly corrupt but

the editor cannot see how to emend it. Omit
in translation.

ὁ τρίτος (σταθμός): the third stage

17 ἀποκαίων: blasting, freezing off; used for
extreme cold or heat

18 πηγνὺς: nom. sg. pres. pple πήγνυμι

ἐνθα δὴ: just then, exactly then

εἶπε: told (them); i.e. commanded (them);
aor. λέγω; supply an object

σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιάζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ
 περιφανῶς ἔδοξεν λῆξαι τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ 20
 τῆς χιόνος τὸ βάθος ὀργυιά· ὥστε καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ
 τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ ἀπώλετο καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς
 τριάκοντα. 5. διεγένοντο δὲ τὴν νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες· ξύλα δ'
 ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ ὀψὲ προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ
 εἶχον. οἱ οὖν πάλαι ἤκοντες καὶ τὸ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσ- 25

ἀνδρά-ποδον, τό: captive, captive-slave, 2
 ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind, 2
 ἀπ-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 2
 βάθος, τό: depth, 3
 δια-γίγνομαι: to go through, pass, 1
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 7
 λήγω: to cease, leave off, abate, 1
 ξύλον, τό: wood, timber, firewood, 3
 ὀργυιά, ἡ: (length of outstretched arms), 1

19 σφαγιάσασθαι: equiv. to an ind.
 command governed by εἶπε
 τῷ ἀνέμῳ: *for...*; dat. of interest
 σφαγιάζεται: either pres. mid. with the
 soothsayer as subject or impersonal pass.
 πᾶσι: *to...*; dat. pl. of reference πᾶς
 δῆ: *quite, absolutely*; intensive with πᾶσι
 20 λῆξαι: aor. inf.
 τὸ χαλεπὸν: *the harshness*; a substantive
 and nom. subject
 ἦν: impf. εἰμί

ὀψέ: late, 2
 πάλαι: long ago, formerly, of old, 2
 περι-φανής, -ές: very clear, conspicuous, 1
 πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: wind, blast, breath, 1
 προσ-ίημι: to send to; allow; undertake, 4
 σφαγιάζομαι: to sacrifice, slay a victim, 3
 τριάκοντα: thirty, 4
 χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, harsh, harmful, 3

21 καὶ...καὶ: *both...and...*
 ὑποζυγίων...ἀνδραπόδων...στρατιωτῶν:
 partitive gen. with πολλὰ, the subject
 ἀπόλετο: aor. mid. ἀπόλλυμι
 ὥς: *nearly*; 'as if' in approximation
 23 τὴν νύκτα: acc. of duration of time
 24 οἱ...προσιόντες: *those...*; pple
 προσέρχομαι
 25 οἱ...ἤκοντες: *those...*; pple
 προσέειπον: *did allow near*; 3s impf.
 προσίημι

ἔσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς 1
 πυρούς ἢ ἄλλο [τι] εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. 6. ἔνθα δὴ μετεδί-
 δοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν εἶχον ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο,
 διατηκομένης τῆς χιόνος βόθροι ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ
 τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος. 5
 7. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν ὅλην ἐπορεύοντο διὰ
 χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλιμιάσαν. Ξενοφῶν δ'
 ὀπισθοφυλακῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀν-
 θρώπων ἡγνόει ὅ τι τὸ πάθος εἴη. 8. ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ

ἀ-γνοέω: be ignorant, not perceive, 1

βάθος, τό: depth, 3

βόθρος, ὁ: hole, 1

βουλιμία: to suffer from bulimia, hunger-
faintness, suffer extreme hunger, 3

βρωτός, -όν: to be eaten, edible; *neut.* meat, 2

δάπεδον, τό: level surface; floor, ground, 1

δια-τήκω: to melt, melt away, thaw, 1

ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon; attack, 5

ἔστε (εἰς+τε): up to; until, 2

μετα-δίδωμι: to give a part of or a share of, 2

μετρέω: to measure; pass over, traverse, 1

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 5

ὀπισθο-φύλακέω: to guard the rear, 3

οὗ: where, 2

ὀψίζω: to do late, come late, 1

πάθος τό: suffering, experience, misfortune 1

πάρ-εimi: to be near, be present, be at hand, 4

πίπτω: to fall, 1

πυρός, ὁ: wheat; a grain of wheat, 2

1 εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν: *unless they...*; protasis of a
past general condition (εἰ + opt., impf.); 3p
aor. opt. μεταδίδωμι

αὐτοῖς: dat. ind. object

2 πυρούς: *wheat*

[τι]: omit the bracketed passage

τι...βρωτόν: acc. object

ἔνθα δὴ: *and then, exactly then*

μετεδίδωσαν: impf.

3 ὧν: (*of the things*) *which*; (τοῦτων) ἅ; acc.
relative pronoun assumes case of a missing
antecedent, a partitive gen. with a verb of
sharing

ἔνθα δὲ: *and where...*; relative clause

4 διατηκομένης...χιόνος: gen. absolute

ἔστε ἐπὶ: *up to...*; i.e. melts all the way to
the ground

5 οὗ δὴ: *just where, exactly where*; οὗ,
'where,' is a relative adv.; δὴ is intensive

παρῆν: *it was possible*; impf. πάρειμι

6 τὴν...ἡμέραν ὅλην: acc. of duration

ἐπιοῦσαν: i.e. next day; ppl

8 τοὺς πίπτοντας: *those...*; i.e. soldiers
as they travelled

9 ὅ τι...εἴη: *what...*; ind. question with opt.
εἰμί in secondary seq. neuter sg. ὅστις
αὐτῷ: i.e. to Xenophon, dat. ind. object

τῶν ἐμπείρων ὅτι σαφῶς βουλιμιῶσι κἄν τι φάγωσιν ἀνα- 10
στήσονται, περιῶν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού τι ὀρώη βρωτόν,
διεδίδου καὶ διέπεμπε διδόντας τοὺς δυναμένους περιτρέχειν
τοῖς βουλιμιῶσιν. 9. ἐπειδὴ δέ τι ἐμφάγοιεν, ἀνίσταντο καὶ
ἐπορεύοντο. πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας 15
πρὸς κώμην ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ ὕδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης
πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας καταλαμβάνει ἔμπροσθεν
τοῦ ἐρύματος. 10. αὗται ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. ὁ δ' ἔρμη-
νεὺς εἶπε Περσιιστὶ ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν

βουλιμιῶσι: to suffer from bulimia, hunger-faintness, suffer extreme hunger, 3
βρωτός, -όν: to be eaten; *neut.* meat, 2
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 7
δια-δίδωμι: to distribute, give out, 1
δια-πέμπω: to send in different ways, 1
ἐμ-πειρος, -ον: experienced, acquainted, 1
ἐμ-προσθεν: in front of, before, 5
ἐν-εσθίω: to eat, consume, 2
ἐρμηνεύς, ὁ: an interpreter, 4
ἔρυμα, ἐρύματος, τό: fence, bulkwark, 2

ἐσθίω: to eat, 3
κνέφας, τό: darkness; dusk, twilight, 1
κόρη, ἡ: girl; daughter, 1
κρήνη, ἡ: spring, fountain, 2
περι-έρχομαι: to go around, go about, 4
περι-τρέχω: to run around, 1
περί: around, about, concerning, 7
Περσιιστὶ: in the Persian tongue, 1
που: anywhere, somewhere; I suppose, 2
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct, definite, 1
ὕδρο-φορέω: to carry water, 1

- 10 τῶν ἐμπείρων: i.e. with knowledge of the symptoms of hunger-faintness
βουλιμιῶσι: βουλιμιῶσι, 3p pres.
κἄν...φάγωσιν: *and if they...*; καὶ ἔαν, aor. subj. ἐσθίω; protasis in a fut. more vivid condition (εἰ ἂν + subj., fut. ind.)
ἀναστήσονται: fut. mid. ἀν-ίστημι
11 περιῶν: nom. sg. pple περιέρχομαι, modifying Xenophon
ὀρώη: ὀράσις 3s opt. ὀράω in a past general condition (εἰ + opt., impf. ind.)
12 διεδίδου: *he would...*; διεδίδοε, 3s iterative impf.
διέπεμπε: *he would...*; iterative impf.
διδόντας: *as givers*; he sent others to help distribute food
τοὺς δυναμένους: i.e. those soldiers with

- the strength to move
13 τοῖς βουλιμιῶσιν: dat. pl. pple, ind. object following διδόντας
ἐμφάγοιεν: 3p aor. opt. ἐμ-εσθίω in a past general temporal clause (equiv. to a past general condition)
ἀνίσταντο: 3p impf. mid. ἀνίστημι
14 πορευομένων: *the (men)...*; gen. abs., the noun is missing and must be supplied
16 ὕδροφορούσας: modifies γυναῖκας and κόρας
πρὸς: *near...*; dat. place where
17 αὗται: *they themselves*; i.e. the females ἡρώτων: ἡρώταον; 3p impf.
τίνες...εἶεν: ind. question with 3p opt. εἰμί in secondary seq.
18 παρὰ βασιλέως: *from the King*

σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἴη, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ ὀψέ ἦν, πρὸς τὸν 20
κώμαρχον συνεισέρχονται εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις.
11. Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐνταῦθα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ 25
δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες ἀπώλονται τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
12. ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινὲς καὶ τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἥρπαζον καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἳ τε διεφθαρ-

ἄνευ: without (+ gen.), 4

ἀπο-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5

ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 3

ἀπο-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 2

ἄρπάζω: seize, carry off, kidnap, 3

ἄ-σιτος, -ον: without food, fasting, 1

δια-τελέω: continue, persevere (to the end) 1

δια-φθείρω: to destroy utterly, disable, 1

ἔρυμα, ἐρύματος, τό: fence, bulwark, 2

ἐφ-έπομαι: to follow after, pursue, 4

λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 6

νυκτερεύω: to pass the night, 2

ὀψέ: late, 2

περί: around, about, concerning, 7

σατράπης, ὁ: satrap, 2

στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, take a position, 4

συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5

συν-εἰς-έρχομαι: to go into or enter together 1

ὑδρο-φόρος, -ον: water-carriers, 1

19 αἱ δὲ: *and they*

ὅτι...εἴη: *that...*; i.e. the satrap, ind. disc. with 3s pres. opt. εἰμί

20 ὅσον παρασάγγην: *as much as...*; acc. of extent

ἐπεὶ: *since...*; causal

ἦν: *it was*; i.e. the time was

22 οὖν: *and so*

ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν: *(those) as many as...*; the missing antecedent is part of the subject; 3p aor. pass. dep. δύναμαι

τοῦ στρατεύματος: partitive gen.

23 τῶν...στρατιωτῶν: *among...*; partitive.

24 διατελέσαι: aor. inf.

25 ἀπώλονται: aor. mid. ἀπόλλυμι

26 ἐφείποντο: impf. mid.. ἐφ-έπομαι

τῶν πολεμίων: partitive with subject τινὲς

συνειλεγμένοι: pf. pass. pple συλλέγω

τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα: *those not...*; i.e. the weaker animals trailing behind; with partitive ὑποζυγίων; μὴ instead of οὐ because the participle is conditional in sense: 'those (if) not being...

27 ἥρπαζον...ἐμάχοντο: *would...would...*;

iterative impf. ἄρπάζω

ἀλλήλοις: *with...*; dat. of association

αὐτῶν: i.e. the animals

28 ἐλείποντο: impf. pass. λείπω

τῶν στρατιωτῶν: *among...*; partitive

οἳ διεφθαρμένοι: pf. pass. pple; as often, the pf. denoted a state, 'being Xed,' rather than an activity, 'having been Xed'

μένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἱ τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους ¹
 τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσσηπότες. ^{13.} ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν
 ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ
 τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν εἴ τις κινεῖτο καὶ
 μηδέποτε ἡσυχίαν ἔχει καὶ εἰς τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο· ^{14.} ὅσοι δὲ ⁵
 ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύνοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ ἱμάντες
 καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν, ἐπειδὴ
 ἐπέλιπε τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα, καρβάτιναι πεποιημένοι ἐκ
 τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν. ^{15.} διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελεί-

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, 4
 ἀπο-σῆπομαι: to lose by rotting or frostbite 1
 ἀρχαῖος, -α, -ον: ancient, old, 1
 δάκτυλος, ὁ: finger, 1
 εἰς-δύ(ν)ω: to enter, go into, 1
 ἐπι-λείπω: fail, be lacking, be wanting, 2
 ἐπικούρημα, -ατος, τό: protection, 1
 ἡσυχία, ἡ: quiet, rest, idleness, silence, 1
 ἱμάς, ἱμάντος, ὁ: leather strap, 1
 καρβάτιναι, αἱ: shoe (of undressed leather), 1
 κινέω: to set in motion, move, 1
 κοιμάω: to put to sleep; *mid.* to sleep, 3
 μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν: black, dark, 2

μηδέ-ποτε: never, 1
 νεό-δαρτος, -ον: newly flayed or skinned, 1
 ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye, 4
 περι-πήγνυμι: to freeze around, fix around, 1
 πούς, ποδός, ὁ: a foot, 7
 πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 3
 τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οῦτο: such, this sort, 3
 ὑπο-δέω: to bind or fasten under (foot), 1
 ὑπό-δημα, -ατος, τό: sandal, shoe, 2
 ὑπο-λείπω: to leave behind, 2
 ὑπο-λύω: to loosen from under, untie, 1
 ψύχος, -εος, τό: the cold, 1

- 1 ὑπο: *because of...*; gen. of cause
 τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς: *in...*; acc. of respect
 οἱ τε: *and those (disabled)*
 2 τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν: *in...*; acc. of respect and partitive gen.; i.e. toes
 ἀποσσηπότες: pf. pple ἀπο-σῆπομαι
 ἦν τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς: dat. of possession and 3s impf; parallel to gen. τῶν ποδῶν below
 εἴ...ἐπορεύετο: *if...*; past general condition (εἰ impf. ind., impf. ind.) where one expects past general with opt.
 πρὸ: *in front of...*; i.e. below the eyes on the upper cheeks to deflect the glare
 4 τῶν ποδῶν: (*there was protection*) for the feet; objective gen., parallel to ὀφθαλμοῖς
 εἴ...κινεῖτο...ἔχει...ὑπολύοιτο: *if...moved*; opt. in past general condition (εἰ + opt., impf. ind.)

- 5 ἡσυχίαν ἔχει: *kept still*
 εἰς: *for...*
 ὑπολύοιτο: modified by μηδέποτε
 ὅσοι: (*those*) as many as; missing antecedent is subject of main verb
 6 ὑποδεδεμένοι: pf. pass. pple, conditional in sense
 7 περιεπήγνυντο: *would...*; iterative impf.
 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
 ἐπειδὴ: *since*
 8 ἐπέλιπε: aor.
 πεποιημένοι: pf. pass. pple ποιέω
 9 βοῶν: the word for the hide and the animal are the same
 διὰ...ἀνάγκας: i.e. challenges
 ὑπελείποντο: iterative impf. passive

- ποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον 10
 διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα, εἵκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ
 ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην τινὰ ἣ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπη.
 ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι.
 16. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας ὥς ἦσθετο, ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν
 πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται 15
 πολλοὶ πολέμοι συνειλεγμένοι, καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαιναν.
 οἱ δὲ σφάττειν ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι.
 17. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 4
 ἀπο-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 4
 ἀτμίζω: to smoke, steam, 1
 αὐτό-θι: on the very spot or moment, 2
 δέομαι: to lack, be in need of (gen.), 2
 εἰκάζω: to liken, compare; guess, conjecture 1
 ἐκ-λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 3
 ἐκ-τρέπω: to turn aside, turn off from, 1
 ἔπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
 κάθ-ημαι: to sit, be seated, 4
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: best; strongest, 7

- 10 ἰδόντες: aor. pple ὁράω (εἶδον)
 11 τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι: articular pf. act. inf.
 ἐκλείπω: τὴν χιόνα is subject; in English
 we often translate the articular inf. as a
 gerund (-ing) and subject as a possessive
 εἵκαζον: 3p impf.
 τετηκέναι: pf. inf. τήκω
 12 ἐτετήκει: plpf. τήκω
 ἥ...νάπη: *which...*; relative clause
 πλησίον: adv.
 ἦν: impf. εἰμί
 13 ἐκτραπόμενοι: aor. mid. ἐκτρέπω
 οὐκ ἔφασαν: *refused*; 'said that...not',
 aor. φημί
 14 ὥς: *as, when*
 ἦσθετο: aor. αἰσθάνομαι
 ἐδεῖτο: *he begged...*, *he asked...*; impf.
 mid.. δέομαι
 αὐτῶν: *from...*; gen. of source

κρήνη, ἥ: spring, fountain, 2
 μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν: black, dark, 2
 μηχανή, ἥ: device, contrivance; means, way 1
 νάπη, ἥ: glen, wooded vale, 2
 πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 5
 συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5
 σφάττω: to slay, slaughter, 2
 τελευτάω: to end, complete, finish; die, 1
 τέχνη, ἥ: art, craft, skill, 1
 τήκω: to melt, melt away, thaw, 2
 χαλεπαίνω: to be angry, be sore with, 2

- 15 πάσῃ...μηχανῇ: *with...*; dat. of manner
 ἀπολείπεσθαι: passive. inf.; Xenophon
 worried that they would not continue with
 the rest; μὴ is used instead of οὐ in wishes
 and commands
 16 συνειλεγμένοι: pf. pass. συλλέγω
 τελευτῶν: *finally*; the pple is very often
 translated as an adverb
 17 οἱ δὲ: *they...*; the soldiers who refused to
 continue
 σφάττειν: add Xenophon as acc. subj. and
 the speakers as acc. object
 (ἔφασαν) ἂν δύνασθαι: (*they said that*) *they*
would...; ind. disc. with ἂν + inf. replacing
 potential opt.; add a main verb
 πορευθῆναι: aor. pass. dep. inf.: translate as
 active
 18 κράτιστον: *best*

φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναίτο, μὴ ἐπίοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ ἦν
 μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσῆσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ ἀμφὶ ὧν 20
 εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. 18. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, ἅτε ὑγιαί-
 νοντες, ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ
 κάμνοντες ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας
 πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἔκρουσαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι δέισαντες ἦκαν
 ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνης εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐ- 25
 δαμοῦ ἐφθέγγετο. 19. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ
 εἰπόντες τοῖς ἀσθενούσιν ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἤξουσί τινες
 ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα στάδια διελθεῖν ἐν-

ἀνα-κράζω: to cry out, shout, 3

ἀ-σθενεω: to be weak, feeble, sick, 3

ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 6

ἅτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 3

δεῖδω: to fear, 5

δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, disagree, 1

δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7

δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: spearshaft; pole, stem, 4

ἐν-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 2

ἐξ-αν-ίστημι: to stand up, rise; raise 1

ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon; attack, 5

ἔτι: still, besides, further, 7

ἦκω: to have come, be present, 7

θόρυβος, ὁ: din, noise, uproar, 3

ἵημι: to send, throw; let go, release, 4

κάμνω: to be tired, afflicted, suffering, 2

κρούω: to strike, smite, 1

μέγιστος, -η, -ον: greatest, mightiest, 1

νάπη, ἡ: glen, wooded vale, 2

οὐδαμ-οὔ: nowhere, 2

σκότος, ὁ: darkness, gloom, 2

τέτταρες, -α: four, 6

τρέχω: to run, 3

ὑγιαίνω: to be sound, healthy, 1

ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 5

φθέγγομαι: utter a sound, cry out, 2

φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 1

19 φοβῆναι: aor. inf. φοβέω

εἴ τις δύναίτο: *if they could*; 'if anyone could' but refers to the men who refuse to move

μὴ ἐπίοιεν: *lest (the enemy)...*; fearing, with opt. in secondary seq.; 3p opt. ἐπέρχομαι

τοῖς κάμνουσι: *on...*; pres. pple. and dat. of compound verb

ἦν: impf. εἰμί

20 οἱ δὲ: *and they*; i.e. the enemy

προσῆσαν: impf. προσέρχομαι

πολλῷ θορύβῳ: *with...*; dat. of manner

ἀμφὶ ὧν...: *about what (loot)...*; relative clause with διαφερόμενοι

21 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then, exactly then*

ἅτε: *inasmuch as...*; 'since...' ἅτε + pple indicates cause from the narrator's view

22 ἔδραμον: aor. τρέχω

ἀνακραγόντες: aor. pple

23 ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον: *as loudly as...*

24 πρὸς: *against...*; the sick rattled shields and spears together

δεῖσαντες: *becoming...*; ingressive aor.

pple δεῖδω

ἦκαν: 3p aor. ἵημι

25 κατὰ...: *over...*

26 εἰπόντες: aor. pple εἶπον (λέγω)

τοῖς ἀσθενούσιν: pres. pple., ind. object

27 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ (ἡμέρᾳ): *on...*; dat. time when

ἤξουσιν: fut. ἦκω

ἐπι(ν)...: *for...*; i.e. rescue them

28 πρὶν...διελθεῖν: *before...*; πρὶν + inf.

τέτταρα στάδια: *for...*; acc. of extent

τυγχάνουσιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαυομένοις ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος τοῖς ¹
 στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία
 καθειστήκει· καὶ ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ
 ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. ²⁰ ὁ δὲ παριὼν καὶ παραπέμπων
 τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί ⁵
 εἴη τὸ κωλύον. οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι ὅλον οὕτως ἀνα-
 παύοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ²¹ ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα
 ἡγύλοισαν αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι, φυλακὰς οἷας
 ἐδύναντο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν, ὁ μὲν

ἄ-δειπνος, -ον: without dinner, 1
 ἀνα-παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid.*, rest, 4
 ἄνευ: without (+ gen.), 4
 ἀπ-αγγέλλω: to report (back), announce, 2
 αὐλιζομαι: to bivouac, encamp, lodge, 5
 αὐτοῦ: in that very place, there, 7
 ἐγ-καλύπτω: to cover in, wrap, veil, 1
 ἔμ-προσθεν: in front, before, 5
 ἐν-τυγχάνω: chance upon, encounter (dat) 2
 ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 7

καθ-ίστημι: to station, appoint; *intransitive*,
 stand, 4
 οἷος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 5
 ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 5
 παρα-πέμπω: to send past, send alongside, 1
 περὶ: around, about, concerning, 7
 σκέπτομαι: to look for, find out, examine, 2
 ὑπο-χωρέω: to go aside, retire, withdraw, 1
 φυλακή, ἡ: a watch, guard, 4

- 1 ἐντυγχάνουσιν: historical pres.: translate in the past
- τοῖς στρατιώταις: dat. of compound verb, modified by two participles; these soldiers are not the sick, who were left behind, but those whom Xenophon ran ahead to meet
- ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις: pf. pass. ἐγκαλύπτω
- 2 οὐδὲ οὐδεμία: *not even...one*; adv.; οὐδεμία is positive after the adv. οὐδὲ, 'not even'
- 3 καθειστήκει: intransitive plpf. act. (note: 'had stood up' can mean 'was standing') ἀνίστασαν: (*Xenophon and his men*) tried to...; conative and transitive impf. ἀνίστημι οἱ δ': *but they...*; those Greeks sitting in the snow
- 3 οἱ ἔμπροσθεν: *those soldiers in front*; i.e. in the baggage train in front of the Greeks

- now sitting
- 4 ὑποχωροῖεν: i.e. so that those currently sitting can pass them; ind. disc. with opt. in secondary seq.
 - ὁ δὲ: *and he...*; i.e. Xenophon
 - παριὼν: pple παρέρχομαι
 - 5 ἰσχυροτάτους: superlative adj.
 - τί εἴη: *what...*; ind. question with opt. εἰμί
 - 6 τὸ κωλύον: *the thing hindering (them)*; substantive, neuter. pres. pple
 - οἱ δὲ: *and they...*
 - ὅλον...τὸ στράτευμα: subject
 - 7 καὶ: *also*
 - 8 αὐτοῦ: *there*; 'in that very place'
 - 9 καταστησάμενοι: aor. mid. pple πρὸς...: *near...*

Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενούντας τοὺς νεωτάτους 10
 ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προϊέναι. 22. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ
 Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς
 ἔχουσιν οἱ τελευταῖοι. οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν
 ἀσθενούντας τούτοις παρέδωσαν κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπε- 15
 δον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διελθού-
 θέναι ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἠυλίζετο. 23. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κώμας ἀσφαλὲς
 εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν,

ἀ-σθενεω: to be weak, feeble, sick, 3
 ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 7
 ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 2
 ἄσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 2
 αὐτοῦ: in that very place, there, 7
 αὐλίζομαι: to bivouac, encamp, lodge, 5
 δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7
 εἴκοσι: twenty, 5
 κομίζω: to bring, 1
 νέος, -α, -ον: young; new, novel, strange, 3

παρα-δίδωμι: to hand over, give over, 4
 πέμπω: send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 7
 προ-έρχομαι: to go forth, advance, 4
 πῶς: how? in what way?, 2
 σκέπτομαι: to look for, find out, examine, 2
 σκηνόω: to encamp, bivouac; pitch camp, 1
 συγ-γίγνομαι: to be with, converse with, 1
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ: unit, squadron; battle array, 7
 τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last, final, 6

- 10 πρὸς...: i.e. to help those left behind, whom Xenophon promised to rescue
 τοὺς νεωτάτους: *the youngest (of Xenophon's soldiers)* with aor. pple πέμψας
 11 ἀναστήσαντας: *making (the weak) stand up*; modifies τοὺς νεωτάτους
 προϊέναι: inf. προέρχομαι
 ἐν δὲ τούτῳ: *meanwhile*; 'in this (time)'
 12 (τινὰς) τῶν ἐκ...κώμης: (some) of...; partitive gen.; supply the acc. pronoun σκεψομένους: *intended to...*; fut. pple expressing purpose or intent
 πῶς ἔχουσιν: *how...*; ind. question with 3p opt. in secondary seq.; ἔχω ('is disposed' or 'holds') + adv. is equiv. to εἶμι + adj.
 13 οἱ δὲ...ιδόντες: *and those...*; pple ὁράω; Xenophon's troops seeing Cheirisophus' troops
 ἄσμενοι: translate nom. adj. as an adv.

- 14 τούτοις: i.e. to Cheirisophus' men; dat. ind. obj.
 παρέδωσαν: aor.
 κομίζειν: inf. of purpose, supply τοὺς ἀσθενούντας, 'the weak' as object
 15 αὐτοὶ: *they themselves*; Xenophon's men handed off the men they were carrying and continued ahead to the camp.
 πρὶν...διελθούθηναι: *before...*; πρὶν + inf. pf. inf. δι-έρχομαι
 εἴκοσι στάδια: *for...*; acc. of extent
 16 πρὸς: *near...*; dat. of place where
 17 ἔδοξε: *it seemed*
 κατὰ τὰς κώμας: *in...throughout...*; κατὰ in the distributive sense
 18 τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν: *to bivouac the units*; inf. o-contract, σκηνόω
 αὐτοῦ: *there*; 'in that very place'

οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ὥς ἐώρων κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι
 τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες. 24. ἔνθα δὴ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχα- 20
 γὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφιέναι ἑαυτόν· καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους,
 θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην ἣν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει
 πάντας ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν κωμάρχον, καὶ πῶλους
 εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους ἑπτακαίδεκα, καὶ τὴν
 θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην· ὁ δ' 25
 ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ὥχετο θηράσων καὶ οὐχ ἦλω ἐν τῇ
 κώμῃ. 25. αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα ὥσπερ

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 4
 ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 6
 ἀφ-ίημι: send away, let go, release; give up, 4
 γαμέω: to marry, wed, 1
 δασμός, ὁ: a division (of spoils), tribute, 2
 δια-λαγχάνω: to divide or distribute by lot, 1
 ἔνατος, -η, -ον: ninth, 1
 ἔνδον: within, at home, 2
 ἑπτα-καί-δεκα: seventeen, 1
 εὐ-ζώνος, -ον: well-girdled, nimble, active, 3
 θηράω: to hunt, chase, 1

θυγάτηρ, ἡ: a daughter, 2
 κατὰ-γείος -ον: underground, 1
 κωμήτης, ὁ: townsman, villager, 1
 λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot, 1
 λαγῶς, ὁ: hare, rabbit, 1
 οἶχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 7
 Πολυκράτης, ὁ: Polycrates, 1
 πῶλος, ὁ: foal, young horse, 3
 στόμα, -ατος, τό: mouth, opening, 2
 τρέφω: to rear, foster, nurture, 3

19 οἱ ἄλλοι: i.e. Greek leaders
 διαλαχόντες: aor. pple
 ὥς...κώμας: *what towns...*; relative adj.
 ἐώρων: ἐώραον, 3p impf. ὁράω
 20 τοὺς ἑαυτῶν: *their own (troops)*
 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then, just then*
 21 ἀφιέναι: *that (they)...*; inf. ἀφ-ίημι, i.e.
 allow him to move and act freely on behalf
 of the army
 22 θέων: pple θέω
 ἐπὶ: *to...*
 ἣν: *which...*; relative clause
 εἰλήχει: plpf. λαγχάνω

24 εἰς: *for...*; expressing purpose
 βασιλεῖ: *for...*; dat. of interest
 25 ἐνάτην ἡμέραν: *...ago*; or 'for...' acc. of
 duration
 γεγαμημένην: pf. pass. pple γαμέω
 ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ: *and the husband*
 26 λαγῶς: acc. sg., Attic declension (S237)
 ὥχετο: impf. οἶχομαι
 θηράσων: fut. pple expressing purpose
 ἦλω: 3s aor. ἀλίσκομαι
 27 ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί
 κατάγειοι: fem. pl. two-ending adjective

φρέατος, κάτω δ' εὐρείαι· αἱ δὲ εἰσοδοὶ τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις 1
 ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ
 ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα
 τούτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. 26. ἦσαν
 δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν 5
 κρατήρσιν. ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ
 κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο, οἱ μὲν μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα
 οὐκ ἔχοντες· 27. τούτους ἔδει ὅποτε τις διψῶν λαβόντα εἰς τὸ
 στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνν ἄκρατος ἦν, εἰ μή τις ὕδωρ ἐπι-

αἶξ, αἶγος, ὁ, ἡ: goat, 2

ἄ-κρατος, -ον: unmixed, pure, strong, 1

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: joint; knee, 1

διψάω: to be thirsty, 1

ἔγ-κειμαι: to lie in, 1

εἰς-οδος, ἡ: entrance, a way in, 2

ἐκ-γονον, τό: offspring, descendent, 1

ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, fewer, 2

ἐνδον: within, at home, 2

ἐν-εἰμί: to be, be in, 1

ἐπι-χέω: to pour over, 1

εὐρύς, -εἶα, -ύ: wide, broad, 1

ἰσο-χειλής, -ές: level with the brim or top, 1

κάλαμος, ὁ: straw, reed, 1

κάτω: downwards, below, 4

κλίμαξ, κλίμακος, ἡ: ladder, 1

κρατήρ, κρατήρος, ὁ: mixing vessel, 2

κριθή, ἡ: barley-grain, barley, 2

κριθίνος, -η, -ον: made from barley, 2

κτήνος, -εος, τό: herd, flock, 3

μείζων, -ον (-ονος): greater, 4

μύζω: to sip, drink with closed lips, 1

οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 5

οἷς, ὄιος, ὁ: ram, 1

ὄρνις, ὄρνιθος, ὁ: bird, 1

ὀρυκτός, -ή, -όν: dug out, dug, 1

ὄσπριον, τό: a pulse, legume, 2

πάνν: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 3

πυρός, ὁ: wheat; a grain of wheat, 2

στόμα, -ατος, τό: mouth, opening, 2

τρέφω: to rear, foster, nurture, 3

ὑδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 5

φρέαρ, φρέατος, τό: man-made well, cistern 1

χιλός, -όν: forage, fodder (often for cattle), 2

1 εὐρείαι: modifies fem. pl. οἰκίαι

τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις: *for...*; dat. of interest
 ὀρυκταί (εἰσί): predicate

2 ἐπὶ: *on...*

3 ἦσαν: impf. εἰμί

4 χιλῶ: dat. of means

ἐτρέφοντο: impf. pass.

5 οἶνος κρίθινος: *barley-wine*

6 ἐνήσαν: *were in (the drink)*; impf. ἐνεἰμί

αὐταί: *themselves*; intensive

7 ἐνέκειντο: impf. ἔγ-κειμαι

οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ: *some...others*; i.e. κάλαμοι
 μείζους, ἐλάττους: μείζο(ν)ες, ἐλάττο(ν)ες

nom. pl. comparatives

γόνατα: i.e. sections in the straw, these are
 drinking straws, as explained below

8 τούτους: *these (straws)*; obj. of λαβόντα,
 aor. pple. of λαμβάνω

ἔδει: impersonal impf. δεῖ

ὅποτε...διψῶν: *whenever...*; διψαοίη, 3s
 pres. opt. διψάω in a general temporal
 clause

9 ἦν: *would be*; 3s customary impf. εἰμί

εἰ...ἐπιχέοι: *unless...*; 'if not...' pres. opt.
 in a past general condition (εἰ opt., impf.)

χέοι· καὶ πάνν ἡδὺν συμμαθόντι τὸ πῶμα ἦν. ^{28.} ὁ δὲ Ξενοφών ¹⁰
 τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς κώμης ταύτης σύνδειπνον ἐποίησατο καὶ
 θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων ὅτι οὔτε τῶν τέκνων στερή-
 σοιτο τὴν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῶν ἐπιτηδείων
 ἀπίαςιν, ἦν ἀγαθὸν τι τῷ στρατεύματι ἐξηγησάμενος φαί-
 νηται ἔστ' ἂν ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθναι γένωνται. ^{29.} ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, ¹⁵
 καὶ φιλοφρονούμενος οἶνον ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν κατορωρυγμένος.
 ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα διασκεπήσαντες οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν
 ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται, ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες

ἀντ-εμ-πίπλημι: fill (acc) of (gen) in reply, 1
 ἄ-φθονος, -ον: without envy, plentiful, 1
 δια-σκηνέω: to disperse to quarters/tents, 3
 ἔθνος, -εος, τό: tribe, people, race, 1
 ἐξ-ηγέομαι: to lead out, bring out, 1
 ἔστε (εἰς+τε): up to; until, 2
 ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 1
 θαρρέω: to be confident, take courage; be
 bold, 2
 κατ-ορύττω: to bury, 1
 κοιμάω: to put to sleep, lull to sleep; sleep, 3
 οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 5

οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 6
 πάνν: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 3
 πῶμα, τό: a drink, 1
 στερέω: to deprive from, rob, defraud, 1
 συμ-μανθάνω: to learn together with, 1
 σύν-δειπνος, ὁ, ἡ: a fellow-dinner, 1
 τέκνον, τό: a child, 2
 ὑπ-ισχνέομαι: to promise, 1
 φαίνω: to show; *mid.* appear, seem, 6
 φιλο-φρονέομαι: to treat kindly, greet, 3
 φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 2
 φυλακή, ἡ: a watch, guard, 4

10 ἡδὺν: *pleasant*; neuter nom. predicate
 συμμαθόντι: *to one accustomed to it*; 'to
 one knowing it,' aor. pple
 11 τὸν ἄρχοντα: *the leader*
 ἐποίησατο: *made* (x) (y); governs a double
 accusative (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)
 12 οὔτε...τε: *both not...and...*
 στερήσοιτο: *he would...*; fut. opt. mid. but
 pass. in sense; in ind. disc. fut. opt. replaces
 fut. ind. in secondary seq.
 τῶν τέκνων: *from...*; gen. separation
 13 αὐτοῦ: i.e. the leader's
 ἀντεμπλήσαντες: aor. pple + gen.
 τῶν ἐπιτηδείων: *partitive with pple*
 14 ἀπίαςιν: 3p fut. ἀπ-έρχομαι; note the
 lack of parallelism with fut. opt. above
 ἦν...φαίνεται: *if he turns out...*; + pple, 'if
 he appears;' ἔάν + pres. subj. in a fut. more

vivid condition with the preceding fut. ind.
 τῷ στρατεύματι: *for...*; dat. of interest
 15 ἔστ(ε)...γένωνται: *until they...*; ἂν + subj.
 γίγνομαι in a general temporal clause
 ὁ δέ: *and he...*; i.e. the leader
 ὑπισχνεῖτο: *impf.*
 οἶνον...ἔνθα: *where the wine...*; 'the wine,
 where (it)...' proleptic use of οἶνον: make
 οἶνον the subject within the clause
 ἦν κατορωρυγμένος: *periphrastic plpf.*
 pass. (pf. pass. pple + impf. εἰμι)
 17 ταύτην...νύκτα: *acc. duration*
 ἐκοιμήθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 18 ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις: *among all the*
abundance; 'among all the plentiful'
 ἐν φυλακῇ: *under guard*

τὸν κώμαρχον καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. 30. τῇ
 δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κώμαρχον πρὸς Χειρί- 20
 σοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ κατελάμβανε πανταχοῦ εὐωχουμένους καὶ
 εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν πρὶν παραθεῖναι αὐ-
 τοῖς ἄριστον· 31. οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν
 τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνια, ἐρίφεια, χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθια, 25
 σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις τοῖς δὲ κριθίνους.
 32. ὁπότε δέ τις φιλοφρονούμενός τῳ βούλοιτο προπιεῖν, εἶλκεν

ἄριστον, τό: breakfast, lunch, 2
 ἄρνιος, -α, -ον: of a lamb, 1
 ἄρτος, ὁ: bread, loaf, 1
 ἀφ-ίημι: send away, let go, release; give up, 4
 ἔλκω: to draw, drag, 3
 ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon; attack, 5
 ἐρίφιος, -ον: of a young goat, of a kid, 1
 εὐ-θυμέω: be of good spirits, 1
 εὐωχέω: to entertain sumptuously, feast, 1
 κρέας, τό: meat, piece of meat, 1
 κριθίνος, -η, -ον: made from barley, 2
 μόσχειος, -ον: of the calf, 1
 ὁμοῦ: at the same place, together, 3

ὅπου: where, 5
 ὀρνίθιος, -α, -ον: of a bird, 1
 οὐδαμό-θεν: nowhere, from nowhere, 1
 ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye, 4
 παντα-χοῦ: everywhere, in every place, 1
 παρα-τίθημι: to place beside, set before, 2
 προ-πίνω: to drink on behalf of, 1
 πυρίνος, -η, -ον: of wheat, 1
 τέκνον, τό: a child, 2
 τράπεζα, ἡ: table, 1
 τρέπω: to turn; rout, 2
 φιλο-φρονέομαι: to treat kindly, greet, 3
 χοίρειος, -α, -ον: of a pig, of swine, 1

19 αὐτοῦ: *his*
 ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς: i.e. in sight
 τῇ...ἡμέρᾳ: *on...*; dat. of time when
 20 ἐπιούσῃ: i.e. the next...; pres. pple
 ἐπέρχομαι in dat. of time when
 21 ὅπου...παρίοι: *wherever...*; 3s pres. opt.
 παρ-έρχομαι in a general relative clause
 ἐτρέπετο: *he would...*; i.e. visit, iterative
 impf.
 πρὸς τοὺς: *to those...*; i.e. the Greeks
 staying in each village
 22 κατελάμβανε: *he found (them)*
 ἀφίεσαν: *(the troops) would would not let*
(them) go; 3p impf. ἀπ-ίημι,
 23 πρὶν...παραθεῖναι: *before...*; aor. inf.
 παρατίθημι

αὐτοῖς: *(beside)...*; dat. of compound verb
 24 οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου: *and there was not (a place)*
where...; impf. εἰμί
 αὐτὴν: αὐτός in the attributive position is
 translated 'same'
 25 ἄρνια...ὀρνίθια: supply κρέα
 26 τοῖς μὲν...τοῖς δέ: *some...others..*; in
 apposition to ἄρτοις
 27 ὁπότε...βούλοιτο: *whenever...*; opt. in a
 general temporal clause, secondary seq.
 τῳ: *someone*; alternate form for indefinite
 τινί, dat. of interest or of compound verb
 προπιεῖν: aor. inf. προπίνω
 εἶλκεν: *he would...*; i.e. escort him, iterative
 impf. ἔλκω

ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα, ἔνθεν ἐπικύψαντα ἔδει ρόφουντα πίνειν 1
 ὥσπερ βοῦν. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἐδίδοσαν λαμβάνειν ὃ τι
 βούλοιο. ὁ δὲ ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο, ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν
 συγγενῶν ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν. 33. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον
 πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατελάμβανον κἀκείνους σκηνοῦντας ἑστε- 5
 φανωμένους τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ στεφάνοις, καὶ διακονοῦντας
 Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς· τοῖς παι-
 σὶν ἐδείκνυσαν ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὃ τι δέοι ποιεῖν. 34. ἐπεὶ δ' ἄλλή-
 λους ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὴ

αἰεὶ: always, forever, in every case, 6

Ἀρμένιοι, οἱ: Armenian, 3

βαρβαρικός, -η, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 2

δείκνυμι: to show, indicate, 4

δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 7

διακονέω: to serve, render a service, 1

ἐνεός, -α, -ον: dear and dumb, speechless, 1

ἐπι-κύπτω: to bend over, stoop over, 1

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, ordinary; public, 3

κρατήρ, κρατήρως, ὁ: mixing vessel, 2

ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry, 1

ὅπου: where, 5

πίνω: to drink, consume, 1

ρόφω: to sip greedily, gulp down, 1

σκηνέω: to encamp, bivouac, set up tents, 5

στέφανος, ὁ: crown, 1

στεφανόω: to crown, put on a wreath, 1

στολή, ἡ: apparel, armament, 2

συγ-γενής, -ές: kinsman, relative, in-born, 1

φιλο-φρονέομαι: to treat kindly, greet, 3

χιλός, -όν: forage, fodder, hay (for cattle), 2

1 ἐπὶ: *to...*; acc. place to which

ἐνθεν: *then*; 'from that point'

ἔδει: impf. δεῖ

2 ὥσπερ: *just as*

τῷ κωμάρχῳ: dat. of indirect object

ἐδίδοσαν: *allowed*; 'granted' + inf.

ὃ τι: *whatever...*, neuter acc. ὅστις with
 opt. in a general relative clause

3 ὁ δὲ: i.e. the village leader, ὁ κωμάχως

ὅπου δὲ...ἴδοι: *but wherever...*; general

relative clause, opt. εἶδον

4 ἐλάμβανεν: *would take (him)*; i.e. welcome
 him, iterative impf.

ἦλθον: aor. ἔρχομαι

5 κα(ί) ἐκείνους: *those also...*

ἑστεφανωμένους: pf. pass./mid. στεφανώ

6 τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ: gen. of material

διακονοῦντας: supply the Greeks as obj.

7 τοῖς παισίν: dat. pl. ind. object, παῖς

8 ἐδείκνυσαν: *they pointed out*; i.e. the
 Greeks used hand gestures and signals

9 ὃ τι δέοι: *whatever...*; neuter acc. ὅστις
 with opt. δεῖ in a general relative clause

9 ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο: i.e. greet each other

κοινῇ: *in common*; dat. in interest

ἀνηρώτων τὸν κώμαρχον διὰ τοῦ Περσίζοντος ἐρμηνέως τίς 10
 εἶη ἡ χώρα. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν ἡρώτων
 τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ δασμός·
 τὴν δὲ πλησίον χώραν ἔφη εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν
 ἔφραζεν ἥ εἶη. 35. καὶ αὐτὸν τότε μὲν ὄχετο ἄγων ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκέτας, καὶ ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαιότερον 15
 δίδωσι τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῆσαι, ὅτι ἤκουεν
 αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι τοῦ Ἡλίου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· ἐκεκά-
 κωτο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν πῶλων λαμβάνει,

ἀνα-τρέφω: to bring up, nurture, 1
 ἀν-ερωτάω: to question, inquire, 1
 Ἀρμενία, ἡ: Armenia, 6
 δασμός, ὁ: a division (of spoils), tribute, 2
 δεῖδω: to fear, 5
 ἐρμηνεύς, ὁ: an interpreter, 4
 ἥλιος, ὁ: Sun, 1
 ἱερὸν, τό: (sacrificial) victim, animal, 3
 κακῶς: to harm, injury, maltreat, 1
 κατα-θῆω: to sacrifice, 1
 οἰκέτης, ὁ: of the house, family; slave, 2

οἶχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 7
 παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old, aged, ancient, 2
 Περσίζω: to speak Persian, 1
 πλησίον, ἡ, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 5
 πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 5
 πῶλος, ὁ: foal, young horse, 3
 τότε: then, at that time, 7
 τρέφω: to rear, foster, nurture, 3
 φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 2
 Χάλυψ, -υβος, ὁ: Chalybian, 4

- 10 ἀνηρώτων: 3p impf. α-contract verb
 τίς εἶη: ind. question, with opt. εἰμί in
 secondary seq.
 11 ὁ δ': *and he...*; i.e. village leader
 Ἀρμενία (εἶη): supply a verb
 ἡρώτων: 3p impf.
 12 τίνι: *for...*; dat. of interest, τίς and
 interrogative in an ind. question
 ὁ δ': *and he...*; the village leader
 βασιλεῖ: dat. possession or interest
 δασμός (εἶη): supply a verb
 13 ἔφη: 3s impf. φημί
 εἶναι Χάλυβας: acc. pl. predicate: the name
 of the people where one expects the name
 of the country
 τὴν ὁδὸν... ἥ εἶη: *where the road...*; 'the
 road, where' proleptic uses of ὁδόν; ind.
 question with opt. εἰμί; dat. place where
 14 αὐτὸν: *him*; the village chief

- ὄχετο: impf. οἶχομαι
 15 οἰκέτας: *family members*
 εἰλήφει: plpf. λαμβάνω; Xenophon is subj.
 παλαιότερον: comparative adj., 'rather X'
 16 δίδωσι: the subject is Xenophon
 ἀναθρέψαντι: dat. sg. aor. pple ἀνατρέφω
 καταθῆσαι: *to...*; aor. inf. of purpose
 ὅτι ἤκουεν: *because (Xenophon)...*
 17 αὐτὸν...εἶναι: *that...*; ind. disc., acc. subj.
 αὐτὸν refers to the horse
 ἱερὸν: substantive
 δεδιὼς: nom. sg. pf. pple δεῖδω
 μὴ ἀποθάνῃ: *lest...*; or 'that'; fearing
 clause with 3s aor. subj. ἀποθνήσκω
 ἐκεκάκωτο: plpf. pass. κακῶς
 18 ὑπὸ: *by...*; 'because of...' gen. of cause
 αὐτὸς: i.e. Xenophon; intensive
 (τινά) τῶν πῶλων: (*one*)...; partitive gen.

καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν ἔδωκεν ἑκάστῳ
 πῶλον. 36. ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, 20
 θυμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολὺ. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ κῶμαρ-
 χος περὶ τοὺς πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων σακία
 περιελεῖν, ὅταν διὰ τῆς χιόνος ἄγωσιν· ἄνευ γὰρ τῶν σακίων
 κατεδύνοντο μέχρι τῆς γαστροῦς.

1. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν μὲν ἡγεμόνα παραδίδωσι 25
 Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δὲ οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχῳ, πλὴν
 τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος· τοῦτον δὲ Πλεισθένει Ἀμφι-
 πολίτῃ δίδωσι φυλάττειν, ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἡγήσοιτο, ἔχων

Ἀμφιπολίτης, -ου, ὁ: of Amphipolis, 1

ἄνευ: without (+ gen.), 4

ἄρτι: just now, exactly, 1

γαστήρ, γαστρος, ὁ: belly, stomach, 1

διδάσκω: to teach, instruct, tell, 1

ἡβάσκω: to come into puberty, 1

θυμο-ειδής, -ές: high-spirited, courageous, 1

κατα-δύω: to go down, sink, set, 1

μείων, μείον: smaller, less, of lesser value, 2

μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5

ὀγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth, 1

οἰκέτης, ὁ: of the house, family; slave, 2

ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 5

παρα-δίδωμι: to hand over, give over, 4

περι-εἶλω: to wrap around, 1

περί: around, about, concerning, 7

Περσικός, -ή, -όν: Persian, 4

Πλεισθένης, ὁ: Pleisthenes, 2

πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 2

πούς, ποδός, ὁ: a foot, 7

πῶλος, ὁ: foal, young horse, 3

σακίον, τό: small bag, little sack, 2

υἱός, -οῦ, ὁ: a son, 2

φυλάττω: to keep watch, keep guard, 6

19 τῶν...λοχαγῶν: partitive gen.

ἔδωκεν: aor. δίδωμι

20 ταύτῃ: in this place; dat. of place where

μείονες: in size not in quantity

τῶν Περσικῶν (ἵππων): gen. comparison

21 πολὺ: far; or 'much,' adverbial acc. (acc. of extent in degree)

ἐνταῦθα δὴ: in just this place, exactly here

καί: also

διδάσκει: assume people as object

23 ὅταν.....ἄγωσιν: whenever they go;

general temporal clause, pres. subj. ἄγω

24 κατεδύνοντο: would...; i.e. in the deep snow; iterative impf.

25 τὸν ἡγεμόνα: (the village chief) as a guide

26 τοὺς οἰκέτας: family members

τῷ κωμάρχῳ: for...; dat. of interest or possession

27 τοῦτον: this one; i.e. the son

28 φυλάττειν: to...; inf. of purpose

ὅπως...ἄπιοι: so that...; purpose clause

with opt. ἀπέρχομαι in secondary seq.

εἰ...ἡγήσοιτο: if...; in ind. disc. fut. opt. replacing fut. ind. in secondary seq.

καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ εἰσεφόρησαν ὥς ¹
 ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ ἀναζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. ² ἡγείτο δ'
 αὐτοῖς ὁ κώμαρχος λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος· καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν
 τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη ὅτι οὐκ
 εἰς κώμας ἤγαγεν. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ ⁵
 τούτῳ. ³ ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, ἔδῃσε δ' οὐ. ἐκ
 δὲ τούτου ἐκείνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδρὰς ὥχετο καταλιπὼν τὸν
 υἱόν. τοῦτό γε δὴ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διά-
 φoron ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο, ἢ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος κάκωσις καὶ

ἀνα-ζεύγνυμι: break camp, yoke again, 1
 ἀπο-διδράσκω: to run away, escape, 1
 γε: at least, at any rate; indeed, 3
 δέω (2): to bind, tie, 3
 διάφορον, τό: difference, disagreement, 1
 εἰς-φοράω: to carry to, bring to, 1
 κάκωσις, -εως ἡ: ill-treatment, oppression, 1
 λύω: to loosen, free; *mid.* ransom, 4
 μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 2

οἶχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 7
 παῖω: to strike, smite, 2
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, 3
 πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 5
 τόπος, ὁ: a place, region, 3
 τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 4
 υἱός, -οῦ, ὁ: a son, 2
 χαλεπαίνω: to be sore, be angry with (dat), 2

- 1 ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον: *having this (son) also αὐτοῦ: his; the guide's*
 εἰσεφόρησαν: i.e. the Greeks are subject
 ὥς ἐδύναντο πλείστα: *as many things as...; clause of comparison with a neut. pl. superlative adj.*
 3 λελυμένος: i.e. not tied up, pf. pass. pple
 καὶ ἤδη τε...καί: *and now when...then...; τε...καί 'when...then' is here used for actions suggesting simultaneity (D515, S2975)*
 4 ἐχαλεπάνθη: *became...; ingressive aor. 3s pass. dep.*
 ὅτι: *because*
 ἤγαγεν: aor. ἄγω
 ὁ δ': *and he...; the guide*

- ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν (κῶμαι): *that...; ind. disc. with 3p opt. εἰμί in secondary seq., supply κῶμαι as subject*
 6 ἐκ τούτου: *from this (event); i.e. as a result*
 7 ἐκείνος: i.e. the guide
 τῆς νυκτὸς: *during...; gen. of time within*
 ἀποδρὰς: nom. sg. aor. pple
 ὥχετο: impf. οἶχομαι
 καταλιπὼν: aor. pple
 8 τοῦτό γε δὴ: *this in fact; or 'this very thing in fact,' γε δὴ together are strongly emphatic (D245, S2828); neuter subject Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι: between...; 'for...' dat. of interest*
 9 ἐγένετο: aor. γίγνομαι

ἀμέλεια. Πλεισθένης δὲ ἠράσθη τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ οἴκαδε 10
 κομίσας πιστοτάτῳ ἐχρήτο. 4. μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ
 σταθμούς ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν
 ποταμόν, εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. 5. ἐντεύθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθ-
 μούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὑπερ-
 βολῇ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. 15
 6. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατέιδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ,
 ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα
 μὴ κατὰ κέρας ἄγων πλησιάσῃ τοῖς πολεμίοις· παρήγγειλε

ἀ-μέλεια, ἡ: neglect, carelessness, 1
 ἀπ-αντάω: to meet, encounter (dat), 2
 ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5
 δέκα: ten, 7
 ἑπτά: seven, 5
 ἐράω: to love (+ gen.) 1
 εὖρος, τό: breadth, width, 3
 ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 4
 καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 7
 κέρας, -ατος, τό: horn, wing (of an army), 2
 κομίζω: to bring, 1
 οἴκα-δε: homeward, home, 1
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7

παύω: to stop, make cease, 3
 πέντε: five, 4
 πιστός, -ή, -όν: trustworthy, loyal; credible 4
 πλεθριαῖος, -α, -ον: broad, of a plethoron, 1
 Πλεισθένης, ὁ: Pleisthenes, 2
 πλησιάζω: to approach, come near (dat.) 1
 Τάοχοι, οἱ: Taochians, 5
 τριάκοντα: thirty, 4
 ὑπερ-βολή, ἡ: crossing, mtn. pass; excess, 6
 Φασιανός, -ά, -όν: Phasian, 1
 Φᾶσις, ὁ: Phasis (river), 1
 Χάλυψ, -υβος, ὁ: Chalybian, 4
 χράομαι: use, employ, enjoy, engage (dat) 6

10 ἠράσθη: *fell in love with* + gen.; ingressive
 aor. 3s pass. deponent ἐράω
 11 πιστοτάτῳ: *most faithful*; predicative,
 agreeing with the missing obj. τῷ παιδί
 ἐχρήτο: impf. χράομαι
 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 πορεύομαι: translate in active
 12 σταθμούς: *for...*; acc. of extent
 ἀνὰ...: *up to...*
 τῆς ἡμέρας: *per day*; 'within a day,' gen. of
 time within
 παρὰ: *to...*; acc. place to which
 13 εὖρος: *in...*; acc. of respect

ἐπορεύθησαν: see above
 14 ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ...ὑπερβολῇ: *on...*; place where
 16 κατείδε: aor. καθοράω
 ἐπαύσατο: aor. mid. παύω +
 complementary pple
 17 εἰς: *nearly*; 'up to', in approximation
 τριάκοντα σταδίους: *for...*; acc. of extent
 ἵνα μὴ...πλησιάσῃ: *so that...may...*; neg.
 purpose clause, 3s aor. subj. πλησιάζω
 παρήγγειλε: aor.
 18 κατὰ κέρας ἄγων: (*while leading*) (*his*
men) *in wings*; i.e. in columns

δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος
 γένοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. 7. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, 20
 συνεκάλεσε στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. ‘οἱ
 μὲν πολέμιοι, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους·
 ὥρα δὲ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνισούμεθα. 8. ἐμοὶ
 μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι τοῖς στρα-
 τιώταις, ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε αὔριον δοκεῖ 25
 ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος.’ 9. ‘ἐμοὶ δέ γε,’ ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, ‘δοκεῖ,
 ἐπὰν τάχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν, ἐξοπλισαμένους ὡς κράτιστα

ἀγωνίζομαι: to contend, compete, fight, 3
 ἀριστάω: to take breakfast, take a meal, 6
 ἀριστο-ποιέω: to make breakfast, 2
 αὔριον: tomorrow, 1
 βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 5
 γε: at least, at any rate; indeed, 3
 εἴτε: either...or; whether...or, 2
 ἐξ-οπλίζομαι: to arm fully, 2
 ἐπὰν (ἐπεὶ ἂν): when, whenever, 1
 ἡμεῖς: we, 5
 κατ-έχω: to hold fast, take possession of, 7

Κλεάνωρ, ὁ: Cleanor, 2
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: best; strongest, 7
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 7
 παρ-άγω: to lead along, lead alongside, 3
 συγ-καλέω: to call together, assemble, 2
 τήμερον: today, 2
 ὑπερ-βάλλω: to pass over, exceed, 5
 ὑπερ-βολή, ἡ: crossing, mtn. pass; excess, 6
 ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 2
 ὥρα, ἡ: season, time, period of time, 3

19 καὶ: also
 τοῖς ἄλλοις: i.e. other officers
 ὅπως...γένειτο: so that...might...; purpose
 clause with aor. opt.
 ἐπὶ φάλαγγος: into a phalanx
 20 ἦλθον: aor. ἔρχομαι
 21 ἔλεξεν: aor. λέγω
 ὧδε: i.e. in the following way
 22 ὥς: as...; parenthetical
 ὁρᾶτε: 2p because he is addressing his men
 23 ὥρα (ἐστὶ): (it is) time...; supply verb
 ὅπως...ἀγωνισούμεθα: how...; clause of
 effort (object clause) with fut. mid. ind.
 ὡς κάλλιστα: as...as possible; ὡς +
 superlative καλῶς, ‘well’

24 δοκεῖ: it seems best
 παραγγεῖλαι: aor. inf.
 ἡμᾶς δὲ: and that we...; ind. disc. governed
 by δοκεῖ
 25 εἴτε...ὄρος: whether...; ind. question
 26 ἐμοὶ γε: for me at least; or ‘to me for my
 part,’ restrictive
 27 ἐπὰν τάχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν: as soon
 as...; else ‘whenever very quickly...’ a
 general temporal clause with ἂν + aor. subj
 and superlative adv.
 (ἡμᾶς) ἐξοπλισαμένους: that we...; supply
 missing ἡμᾶς as the acc. subject
 ὡς κράτιστα: as...as possible; ὡς +
 superlative (here, superlative adv.)

ἵεναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. εἰ γὰρ διατρίβομεν τὴν τήμερον 1
 ἡμέραν, οἳ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς ὀρώντες πολέμοι θαρραλεώτεροι
 ἔσονται καὶ ἄλλους εἰκὸς τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους προσ-
 γενέσθαι.¹⁰ μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· ‘ἐγὼ δ’ οὕτω
 γιγνώσκω. εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρα- 5
 σκευάσασθαι, ὅπως ὡς κράτιστα μαχοῦμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα
 ὡς ῥᾶστα ὑπερβάλλειν, τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ σκεπτέον εἶναι, ὅπως
 ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα λάβωμεν, ὡς ἐλάχιστα δὲ
 σώματα ἀνδρῶν ἀποβάλωμεν.¹¹ τὸ μὲν οὖν ὅρος ἐστὶ τὸ

ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 8

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, 4

ἀπο-βάλλω: to throw off or away, 1

γιγνώσκω: to come to know, learn, realize, 2

δια-τρίβω: to spend time, waste time, 1

εἰκός, ὅτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable, 1

ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: smallest, least, fewest, 2

ἡμεῖς: we, 5

θαρραλέος, -α, -ον: daring, bold, 1

θαρρέω: to be confident, take courage; be bold, 2

κράτιστος, -η, -ον: best; strongest, 7

νῦν: now; as it is, 4

παρασκευάζω: to prepare, get ready, 4

προσ-γίγνομαι: come to, join oneself to, 1

ῥᾶστος, -η, -ον: easiest, best, 1

σκεπτέος, -ον: to be considered, 1

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 4

τήμερον: today, 2

τραῦμα, ατος, τό: wound, 1

ὑπερ-βάλλω: to pass over, exceed, 5

1 ἵεναι: add ἡμᾶς as subject, inf. ἔρχομαι
 ἐπὶ: *against*...; acc. place to which
 εἰ...διατρίβομεν...ἔσονται: an emotional
 fut. more vivid (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut.) is where
 a fut. replaces ἄν + subj. in the protasis to
 express heightened emotion

2 θαρραλεώτεροι: comparative adj.

3 ἔσονται: fut. deponent εἰμί
 εἰκός (ἔσται): (*it will be*) *likely*...; a
 impersonal construction; add a verb
 ἄλλους...προσγενέσθαι: *that others*...;
 acc. subj. + aor. inf.

τούτων θαρρούντων: gen. abs.
 πλείο(ν)ες: comparative adj. with ἄλλους

6 ὅπως...μαχοῦμεθα: (*namely*) *how*...;
 clause of effort (object clause, ὅπως + fut.)

in apposition to τοῦτο,

ὡς κράτιστα: *as....as possible*; ὡς +
 superlative (adv.)

7 ὡς ῥᾶστα: *as....as possible*; ὡς +
 superlative (adv.)

σκεπτέον εἶναι: *that we must*...; or ‘is to
 be...(by us)’ verbal adj. + εἰμί expressing
 necessity. This construction is often
 translated in the active voice.

ὅπως...λάβωμεν...ἀποβάλωμεν:
 (*namely*) *how...we are to*...; ind.
 deliberative question in apposition to
 τοῦτο with 1p aor. subj. λαμβάνω,
 ἀποβάλλω

8 ὡς ἐλάχιστα: *as....as possible*; ὡς +
 superlative adj.

ὁρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἐφ' ἐξήκοντα στάδια, ἄνδρες δ' οὐδαμοῦ 10
 φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς φανεροί εἰσιν ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν·
 πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττον τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους καὶ κλέψαι τι πειρᾶσθαι
 λαθόντας καὶ ἀρπάσαι φθάσαντας, εἰ δυνάμεθα, μᾶλλον ἢ
 πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἀνθρώπους παρεσκευασμένους μάχε-
 σθαι. 12. πολὺ γὰρ ῥᾶον ὄρθιον ἀμαχεῖ ἰέναι ἢ ὁμαλὲς ἔνθεν 15
 καὶ ἔνθεν πολεμίων ὄντων, καὶ νύκτωρ ἀμαχεῖ μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ
 πρὸ ποδῶν ὁρῶν τις ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα
 τοῖς ποσὶν ἀμαχεῖ ἰοῦσιν εὐμενεστέρα ἢ ἡ ὁμαλὴ τὰς κεφαλὰς

ἀ-μαχεῖ: without resistance, 3
 ἀρπάζω: seize, carry off, kidnap, 3
 ἐξήκοντα: sixty, 2
 ἐρήμιος, -ον: deserted, desolate, 4
 εὐ-μενής, -ές: well-disposed, kindly, 1
 ἡμεῖς: we, 5
 ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 7
 κεφαλὴ, ἡ: the head, 4
 κρεῖττων, -ον: better, stronger, superior, 1
 λανθάνω: to escape notice, forget, 5
 μᾶλλον: more, rather, 4

νύκτωρ: at night, 2
 ὁμαλός, -ή, -όν: level (ground), even, 2
 οὐδαμ-οῦ: nowhere, 2
 παρασκευάζω: to prepare, get ready, 4
 πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7
 ποῦς, ποδός, ὁ: a foot, 7
 πρὸ: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 3
 ῥάων, ῥᾶον: easier, better, 1
 τραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rough, jagged, 2
 φθάνω: to act first, act beforehand, 3
 φυλάττω: to keep watch, keep guard, 6

10 τὸ...ὁρώμενον: *the part (of the mountain) seen*; in apposition to ὄρος apposition
 πλέον: neuter nom. predicate
 ἐφ': *over...*; ἐπὶ, acc. of extent
 11 οὐδαμοῦ...ἀλλ(ο) ἢ: *nowhere other than*;
 ἄλλο often drops the acute before ἢ
 φανεροί εἰσιν: *are visibly*; 'are visible'
 κατὰ...ὁδόν: *on...*; 'over' αὐτὴν is an
 intensive pronoun
 12 πολὺ: *far, much*; adv. acc. (acc. of extent
 in degree)
 κρεῖττον (ἐστί): *(it is) better...*; a predicate,
 in an impersonal construction
 τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους...τι: *some (part)...*;
 partitive gen. with indefinite τι; ἐρήμου
 refers to the part unoccupied by the enemy
 καὶ...καὶ...: *both...and*
 κλέψαι: aor. inf. κλέπτω after πειρᾶσθαι
 13 λαθόντας: *by...*; causal aor. pple
 ἀρπάσαι: aor. inf. ἀρπάζω
 φθάσαντας: *by...*; causal aor. pple

εἰ δυνάμεθα: *if we should...*; pres. opt.
 in a mixed condition with κρεῖττον (ἐστί)
 ἢ: *than*
 πρὸς: *against*
 15 πολὺ: *far*; or 'more'
 ῥᾶον (ἐστί): *(it is) easier...*; impersonal
 ὄρθιον, ὁμαλές: *over....over...*; a variation
 of acc. of extent
 ἰέναι: inf. ἔρχομαι
 ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν: *from this side and that side*;
 16 πολεμίων ὄντων: gen. abs., pple εἰμί
 ἄν...ὁρῶν τις: ὁραοίη, 3s potential opt.
 τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν: *things before (our) feet*
 17 μετ(ὰ) ἡμέραν: *after daybreak*
 ἡ τραχεῖα (ὁδός): supply fem. sg. 'road'
 18 τοῖς...ιοῦσιν: *for (those)...*; dat. pl. of
 interest, pple ἔρχομαι
 ποσὶν: *by...*; dat. pl. of means, ποῦς
 εὐμενεστέρα (ἐστί): comparative, predicate
 ἡ ὁμαλὴ (ὁδός): supply fem. sg. 'road'
 τὰς κεφαλὰς: *in...*; acc. of respect

βαλλομένοις. 13. καὶ κλέψαι δ' οὐκ ἀδύνατόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι,
 ἐξὸν μὲν νυκτὸς ἰέναι, ὥς μὴ ὀράσθαι, ἐξὸν δ' ἀπελθεῖν 20
 τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ αἰσθῆσιν παρέχειν. δοκοῦμεν δ' ἂν μοι
 ταύτῃ προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν ἐρημοτέρῳ ἂν τῷ ὄρει
 χρήσθαι· μένοιεν γὰρ ἂν αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον ἄθροοι οἱ πολέμοιοι.
 14. ἀτὰρ τί ἐγὼ περὶ κλοπῆς συμβάλλομαι; ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ
 Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὅσοι ἐστὲ τῶν ὁμοίων 25
 εὐθύς ἐκ παίδων κλέπτειν μελετᾶν, καὶ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι

ἀ-δυνατός, -ή, -όν: incapable, impossible, 2
 ἄθροοι, -αι, -α: in a mass, all together, 4
 αἰσθῆσις, ἡ: perception, sense, appearance, 1
 αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: shameful, disgraceful, 1
 ἀτάρ: but, nevertheless, 1
 αὐτοῦ: in that very place, there, 7
 βάλλω: to throw, cast; shoot, 3
 ἐγώγε: I for my part, 1
 ἐξ-εστί: it is allowed, it is possible, 4
 ἐρήμος, -ον: deserted, desolate, 4
 κλοπή, ἡ: theft, 1
 Λακεδαιμόνιος, -η, -ον: Lacedaemonian, 1

μᾶλλον: more, rather, 4
 μελετάω: to care for, practice, study, 1
 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 5
 περὶ: around, about, concerning, 7
 προσ-βάλλω: to attack, strike against, dash 3
 προσ-ποιέομαι: pretend; gain, win over, 2
 συμ-βάλλω: to join (in battle), contribute, 1
 τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so much,
 so many, 3
 ὑμεῖς: you, 5
 χρᾶμαι: use, employ, experience (+ dat) 6
 ὦ: O! oh!, 1

19 βαλλομένοις: *for (those soldiers)...*; pass.
 pple βάλλω, 'hit,' in contrast to dat. pple
 τοῖς ἰοῦσιν pple
 κλέψαι: aor. inf. κλέπτω
 20 ἐξὸν...ἰέναι: *(since) ...is possible*; '...being
 possible'; acc. abs. (common with impers.
 verbs) which is causal in sense, neut. sg.
 pple ἔξεστί; inf. ἔρχομαι
 νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. of time within
 ὥς μὴ ὀράσθαι: *so as...*; negative result
 clause with a passive inf.
 ἐξὸν...ἀπελθεῖν: *and (since) ...is possible*,
 another acc. abs., inf. ἀπέρχομαι
 21 τοσοῦτον: *for...*; acc. of extent
 ὥς μὴ...: *so as...*; negative result clause
 αἰσθῆσιν παρέχειν: i.e. not to be seen
 δόκοῦμεν δ' ἂν...ἂν χρήσθαι: *it seems to*
me that we would experience...; 'we seem...
 to experience'; ἂν + inf. is equiv. to a
 potential opt. or apodosis in a fut. less
 vivid; a duplicated ἂν often emphasizes the

intervening words and on other occasions is
 simply redundant
 22 ταύτῃ προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν:
(if) ...; pple is conditional in sense, equiv. to
 protasis in a fut. less vivid
 ταύτῃ: *in this way*; a dat of manner
 23 μένοιεν ἂν: *they would...*; 3p pres.
 potential opt. μὲνω
 αὐτοῦ: *here*; 'in this very spot'
 24 τί: *why...?*; 'in respect to what?'
 συμβάλλομαι (λόγους): *I am contributing*
(words); i.e. why do I make a suggestion
 ὑμᾶς...τοὺς λακεδαιμονίους...μελετᾶν:
that you Spartans; ind. disc.; α-contract inf.
 25 ἐστὲ: 2p pres. εἰμί
 τῶν ὁμοίων: *of equal citizens*; 'of peers'
 partitive gen. predicate; the Spartans used
 this term to describe their aristocracy
 26 ἐκ παίδων: *from childhood*
 οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι: *(that) it is...*; ind. disc.
 and impersonal

ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα μὴ κωλύει νόμος. 15. ὅπως δὲ ὥς 1
 κράτιστα κλέπτητε καὶ πειρᾶσθε λανθάνειν, νόμιμον ἄρα
 ὑμῶν ἐστίν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. νῦν
 οὖν μάλα σοι καιρός ἐστίν ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ
 φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὥς μὴ 5
 πληγὰς λάβωμεν.' 16. 'ἀλλὰ μέντοι,' ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, 'κἀγὼ
 ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δη-
 μόσια, καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ κινδύνου τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ
 τοὺς κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ ὑμῶν οἱ κράτιστοι

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 4
 ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 2
 δεινός, -ή, -όν: skillful, clever; terrible, 3
 δημόσιος, -α, -ον: of the people, public, 1
 ἐάν: εἰ ἂν, if (+ subj.), 2
 εἴ-περ: if really, if in fact, 1
 ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 2
 καιρός, ὁ: time, (right) moment, 2
 κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: best, mightiest, 7
 λανθάνω: to escape notice, forget, 5
 μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 4

μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 5
 μαστιγῶ: whip, flog, 1
 μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 6
 νόμιμος, -η, -ον: customary, 1
 νόμος, ὁ: law, custom, 1
 νῦν: now; as it is, 4
 παιδεία, ἡ: education, culture, learning, 2
 πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7
 πληγή, ἡ: blow, strike, beating, 1
 ὑμεῖς: you, 5
 φυλάττω: to keep watch, keep guard, 6

- 1 καλόν (εἶναι): *but (that it is) noble*
 ὅσα: (all) *that...*; '(things) as many as'
 relative clause with missing antecedent;
 μὴ is used instead of οὐ in a general
 relative clause
 ὅπως...κλέπτητε...πειρᾶσθε: *so that you*
may...; purpose clause, both verbs are pres.
 subj.; πειρᾶσθε is 2p α-contract subj.
 ὥς κράτιστα: *as...as possible*; ὥς +
 superlative (adv.)
 2 νόμιμον...ἐστίν: *it is...*; impersonal
 3 ἐὰν ληφθῆτε: *if ever you...*; 2p aor. pass.
 subj. λαμβάνω
 κλέποντες: (while)...; circumstantial pple
 μαστιγοῦσθαι: *that (you)...*; pres. pass. inf.
 4 μάλα...καιρός ἐστίν: *it is...*; + inf.
 5 μὴ...ληφθῶμεν: *lest...*; fearing clause, 1p
 aor. pass. subj. λαμβάνω
 κλέποντες: (while)...; circumstantial pple
 τοῦ ὄρους: (part of) the mountain; partitive
 6 ὥς μὴ: *so that we may...*; negative purpose,

- aor. active subj. λαμβάνω
 ἀλλὰ μέντοι: *well, certainly*; both may be
 adversative but in replies ἀλλὰ often
 opposes the whole statement (well, but)
 and μέντοι is affirmative (surely, certainly)
 κα(ί) (ἐ)γώ: *I too*
 7 ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους: *that you Athenians...*
 ind. disc., acc. subject
 κλέπτειν: *at...*; explanatory (epexegetical)
 inf. with δεινοῦς: translate as gerund (-ing)
 τὰ δημόσια: *public funds*
 8 καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ κινδύνου: *although*
 ...; gen. abs. is concessive in sense, the
 adv. καὶ just as καίπερ means 'although'
 δεινοῦ: *terrible*; predicate different in sense
 from its use in the previous clause
 9 τοὺς κρατίστους: *and moreover the*
mightiest (are) especially (skilled at
stealing); add δεινοῦς εἶναι κλέπτειν from
 above
 ὑμῶν: obj. of main verb

ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦνται· ὥστε ὦρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παι- 10
 δείαν.' 17. 'ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν,' ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, 'ἔτοιμός εἰμι τοὺς
 ὀπισθοφύλακας ἔχων, ἐπειδὰν δειπνήσωμεν, ἰέναι καταλη-
 ψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· οἱ γὰρ γυμνήτες
 τῶν ἐπομένων ἡμῖν κλωπῶν ἔλαβόν τινας ἐνεδρεύσαντες·
 τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ ἄβατόν ἐστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ 15
 νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ
 ὄρους, βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ἔσται. 18. ἐλπίζω δὲ οὐδὲ τοὺς
 πολεμίους μενεῖν ἔτι, ἐπειδὰν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ

ἄ-βατος, -ον: untrodden, impassable, 2
 αἶξ, αἶγος, ὁ, ἡ: goat, 2
 ἀξίος: deem worthy, think worthy, 1
 ἅπαξ: once, once only, once for all, 2
 βατός, -ή, -όν: passable, accessible, 1
 γυμνήτης, -ου, ὁ: light-armed soldier 6
 δειπνέω: to dine, have dinner, 3
 ἐάν-περ: if, 1
 ἐλπίζω: to hope for, expect, 1
 ἐν-εδρεύω: to set an ambush, lie in wait, 2

ἐπειδάν: whenever, 5
 ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 2
 ἔτι: still, besides, further, 7
 ἐτοίμος, -η, -ον: ready, prepared, at hand, 1
 ἡμεῖς: we, 5
 κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ: thief, 1
 νέμω: to graze, pasture; distribute, 1
 παιδεία, ἡ: education, culture, learning, 2
 πυνθάνομαι: learn (by inquiry or hearsay), 2
 ὦρα, ἡ: season, time, period of time, 3

- 10 ὑμῖν ἄρχειν: *to rule you*
 ὦρα (ἔστι): *it is time*; note the repetition in phrasing from Xenophon's own speech
 καὶ σοὶ: *for you also*; καὶ is adverbial
 12 δειπνήσωμεν: ἄν + aor. subj. in a general temporal clause
 ἰέναι: inf. ἔρχομαι following ἔτοιμος
 καταληψόμενος: *intending to...*; fut. ppl
 καταλαμβάνω expressing purpose
 13 καὶ: *also*
 14 τῶν ἐπομένων...κλωπῶν: partitive gen. with τινας; ἔποιμαι governs a dat. ind. obj.
 ἔλαβον: *captured*; aor. λαμβάνω
 τινας: i.e. the enemy
 15 τούτων: *from these men*; gen. source
 καὶ: *also*
 16 νέμεται: *it...*; impersonal pass.

- αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν: dat. pl. of means
 ἐάνπερ...λάβωμεν,...ἔσται: fut. more vivid (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut.), fut. εἰμί
 τοῦ ὄρους: partitive gen.
 17 καὶ: *also*
 τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις: *for...*; dat. of interest
 ἔσται: 3s fut. εἰμί with neuter pl. subject
 οὐδὲ: *not even*; adv.
 18 μενεῖν: μενέ-ειν, fut. inf. (μένειν is pres.) in ind. disc.
 ἴδωσιν: 3p aor. subj. ὁράω (aor. εἶδον) in a general temporal clause
 ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ: *on the level (with them)*; or 'on par (with them)'
 ἐπὶ: *upon...*

τῶν ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν ἐθέλουσι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον
 ἡμῖν.’ 19. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· ‘καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἰέναι καὶ λιπεῖν 20
 τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν μὴ τινες
 ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ φαίνωνται.’ 20. ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυ-
 δριεύς ἔρχεται ὀπλίτας ἔχων καὶ Ἀριστέας ὁ Χῖος γυμνήτας
 καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα ἐποίησαντο,
 ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα, πυρὰ καίειν πολλά. 21. ταῦτα συνθέ- 25
 μενοι ἡρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου προήγαγεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος

ἀριστάω: to take breakfast, take a meal, 6
 Ἀριστέας, ὁ: Aristetas, 2
 ἄριστον, τό: breakfast, lunch, 2
 Ἀριστώνυμος, ὁ: Aristonymus (person), 5
 γυμνήτης, -ου, ὁ: light-armed soldier 6
 ἐθέλοντής, ὁ: volunteer, one willing, 3
 ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 1
 λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 6
 Μεθυδριεύς, ὁ: of Methydrium, 4
 Νικόμαχος, ὁ: Nicomachus, 1

τῶν ἄκρων: *the heights*
 19 οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν: *for...not now*
 καταβαίνειν: i.e. from the heights
 εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν: *on the same level with us;*
 ‘on the equal to us’
 20 τί: *why...?; ‘in respect to what?’*
 ἰέναι, λιπεῖν: aor. inf. ἔρχομαι, λείπω
 21 ἀλλὰ: *rather...; or, as often before an*
imperative, ‘come now’
 πέμψον: aor. imperative
 ἂν μὴ...φαίνονται: *if...; contracted ἐὰν +*

νῦν: now; as it is, 4
 Οἰταῖος, -α, -ον: of Oeta, Oetaean, 1
 ὀπισθο-φύλακία, ἡ: rear-guard, 1
 πέμπω: send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 7
 προ-άγω: to lead forward, 1
 πυρὰ, -ῶν, τά: watch-fire, 6
 σύν-θημα, -ατος, τό: agreement; password 1
 συν-τίθημι: to agree, put together, 3
 φαίνω: to show; *mid.* appear, seem, 6
 Χῖος, -η, -ον: Chian, of Chios, 2

subj., protasis in a pres. general condition
 22 ἐθέλοντες: *as volunteers*
 ἐκ τούτου: *as a result; ‘from this’*
 23 γυμνήτας (ἔχων): supply the pple
 25 ὅποτε ἔχοιεν: *whenever...; 3p pres. opt. in*
a past general temporal clause
 τὰ ἄκρα: *the heights*
 25 πυρὰ καίειν πολλά: *that (they)...; ind.*
disc. in apposition to σύνθημα
 συνθέμενοι: aor. mid. pple συντίθημι
 26 ἡρίστων: ἡρίστων, 3p impf.

τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν ὥς δέκα σταδίους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ¹
ὅπως ὥς μάλιστα δοκοίη ταύτῃ προσάξειν.

22. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν καὶ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες
ῥχοντο, καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ
ἀνεπαύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ⁵
ἐργηγόρεσαν καὶ ἔκαιον πυρὰ πολλὰ διὰ νυκτός. 23. ἐπειδὴ δὲ
ἡμέρα ἐγένετο Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν
ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἐπῆσαν.
24. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενε ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 4
ἀνα-παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid.*, rest, 4
αὐτοῦ: in that very place, there, 7
δειπνέω: to dine, have dinner, 3
δέκα: ten, 7
ἐγείρω: to awaken, rouse, 1
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon; attack, 5

θύω: to sacrifice, 3
μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 5
οἶχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 7
προσ-άγω: to bring to, attach, apply, 3
πυρά, -ών, τά: watch-fire, 6
τάττω: post, station, arrange, order, 6
ὑπερ-βολή, ἡ: crossing, mtn. pass; excess, 6

- 1 ὥς: *nearly*; 'as if,' in approximation
δέκα σταδίους: *for...*; acc. of extent
2 ὅπως...δοκοίη: *so that...(the army) might*
...; purpose, 3s opt. in secondary sequence
ὥς μάλιστα: *as...as possible*; ὥς +
superlative (adv.) of μάλα, 'much'
ταύτῃ: *in this way*; i.e. in this direction,
dat. of manner
3 οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι: *some...others...*
ταχθέντες: aor. pass. ppl τάττω
ῥχοντο: impf. οἶχομαι

- αὐτοῦ: *here*; 'in this very place'
5 ἦσθοντο: impf. αἰσθομαι
ἐργηγόρεσαν: plpf. ἐγείρω; the pf. tenses
denote a state, e.g. 'were awake,' rather
than an activity, e.g. 'had awakened'
7 ἦγε: impf. ἄγω
κατὰ: *on...*
οἱ δὲ: *but those...*
8 κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα: *on the heights*
ἐπῆσαν: impf. ἐπ-έρχομαι
9 τὸ πολὺ: *the majority*; 'a great (part)'

ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν ἀπὴντα τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν δὲ 10
 ὁμοῦ εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλοις, συμμιγνύσασιν οἱ κατὰ
 τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ διώκουσιν. 25. ἐν τούτῳ
 δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 δρόμῳ ἔθεον πρὸς τοὺς παρατεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ
 βάδην ταχὺ ἐφείπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις. 26. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οἱ 15
 ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἄνω ἑώρων ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ
 ἀπέθανον μὲν οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, γέρρα δὲ πάμπολλα ἐλήφθη·
 ἃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποιοῦν.

ἀπ-αντάω: to meet, encounter (dat), 2
 ἀχρεῖα, ἡ: rubbish, useless things, 1
 βάδην: step by step, gradually, 2
 γέρρον, τό: wicker-work; wicker-shield, 6
 διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 3
 δρόμος, ὁ: run, running, flight; race course, 5
 ἐφ-έπομαι: to follow after, pursue, 4
 ἡττάομαι: to be less, be weaker or inferior, 1

- 10 μέρος αὐτῶν: i.e. the enemy
 ἀπὴντα: ἀπὴντα-ε; 3s impf.
 τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα: *those along...*; i.e. the enemy; dat. of compound verb
 11 τοὺς πολλοὺς: i.e. the two armies, acc. subject of inf. εἶμι
 ὁμοῦ...ἀλλήλοις: predicate of εἶναι
 οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα: *those on the heights*
 12 νικῶσιν: νικάουσιν; 3p pres.
 ἐν τούτῳ: *meanwhile*; 'in this (time)'
 13 οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου...τῶν Ἑλλήνων: *those of the Greeks on the plain*
 οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ...Χειρίσοφος δὲ: *the peltasts on the one hand...Cheirisophus on the other hand*; distributive apposition following οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου
 14 δρόμῳ: *on...*; dat. of manner

κόπτω: to strike, hack, knock, 2
 μάχαιρα, ἡ: sabre, curved sword; knife, 1
 μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share; detachment, 1
 νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 2
 ὁμοῦ: at the same place, together (dat) 3
 παμ-πολύς, -πολλή, -πολύ: very many, 2
 παρα-τάττω: draw up in battle order, 5
 συμ-μῖγνυμι: to mix together in battle, 1

- ἔθεον: *began to...*; inchoative impf. θέω
 παρατεταγμένους: pf. pass. prpl παρατάττω
 15 ταχύ: adverbial acc. ταχύς
 ἐφείπετο: impf. ἐφ-έπομαι
 16 οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ: in the attributive position modifying πολέμοι
 τὸ ἄνω (μέρος): *the (unit) above*; i.e. on the mountain, see line 10
 ἑώρων: 3p impf. ὁράω
 17 ἀπέθανον: aor. ἀποθνήσκω
 ἐλήφθη: 3s aor. pass. λαμβάνω with a neuter pl. subject
 ταῖς μαχαίραις: dat. of means
 18 ἐποιοῦν: *made (x) (y)*; governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.)

27. ὥς δ' ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέ-
βησαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον, καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν 20
γεμούσας ἦλθον.

1. ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους σταθμοὺς πέντε
παρασάγγας τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλειπε· χωρία
γὰρ ᾧκουν ἰσχυρὰ οἱ Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἅπαντα
εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι. 2. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον δ' 25
πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ' οἰκίας, συνελλυθότες δ' ἦσαν
αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη πολλά, Χειρί-

ἀνα-κομίζω: to bring up, bring back, 2
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 3
αὐτό-σε: to the very spot or moment, 1
γέμω: to be full of, be loaded of, (gen) 1
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 7
ἐπι-λείπω: fail, be lacking, be wanting, 2
θύω: to sacrifice, 3
ἵστημι: make stand, set up, stop, establish, 7
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 7

19 ὥς: when

ἀνέβησαν: 3p aor. ἀναβαίνω

στησάμενοι: aor. mid. ἵστημι is transitive

κατέβησαν: aor. καταβαίνω

20 πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν: neut. pl. partitive
gen.

21 ἦλθον: aor. ἔρχομαι

22 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.

πορεύομαι: translate in active

σταθμοὺς...παρασάγγας: for...; acc. of
extent

χωρία...ἰσχυρὰ: i.e. strongholds or

κτήνος, -εος, τό: herd, flock, 3

οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5

πέντε: five, 4

πόλις, ἡ: a city, 3

συν-έρχομαι: come together, meet in battle 3

Τάοχοι, οἱ: Taochians, 5

τριάκοντα: thirty, 4

τρόπαιον, τό: monument, trophy, 1

fortified placed

24 ᾧκουν: ᾧκεον, 3p impf. οἰκέω

ἐν οἷς: in which...; relative clause

καί: also

25 εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι: periphrastic plpf.
mid. (impf. ἔχω + pf. mid. pple), or

perhaps separately, equiv. to 'kept Xed'

ἀφίκοντο: aor. ἀφικνέομαι

δ: which; relative clause

26 συνελλυθότες δ' ἦσαν: periphrastic plpf.
act. (pf. pple συνέρχομαι + impf. εἰμί)

27 κτήμη: κτήμε-α

σοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς τοῦτο προσέβαλλεν εὐθὺς ἦκων· ἐπειδὴ 1
 δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις ἀπέκαμνεν, ἄλλη προσήει καὶ αὐθις ἄλλη·
 οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλ' ἀπότομον ἦν κύκλω.
 3. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι καὶ πελτα-
 σταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· 'εἰς καλὸν 5
 ἦκετε· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ
 ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον. 4. ἐνταῦθα δὴ κοινῇ ἐβου-
 λεύοντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφώντος ἐρωτῶντος τί τὸ κωλύον εἴη
 εἰσελθεῖν, εἶπεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος· 'μία αὕτη πάροδος ἐστὶν ἣν

ἀθρόοι, -αι, -α: in a mass, all together, 4
 αἰρετέος, -ον: to be chosen, to be taken, 1
 ἀπο-κάμνω: to grow quite weary, tire, 1
 ἀπό-τομος, -ον: cut off; sheer; severe, 2
 αὐθις: back, back again, backwards, 2
 βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 5
 εἰς-έρχομαι: to go to, approach; enter, 2
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 7

- 1 πρὸς τοῦτο (χωρίον): *against this (stronghold)*; i.e. χωρία ἰσχυρὰ noted above
 ἦκων: nom. sg. pple
 2 ἄλλη (τάξις): *another unit*
 προσήει: impf. προσέρχομαι
 3 ἦν: *it was possible*; impf. εἰμί
 περιστῆναι: aor. inf. περιστήμι
 ἀθρόοις (αὐτοῖς): missing pronoun is dat. pl. obj. of compound verb
 κύκλω: *on all sides*; 'in a circle'
 4 ἦλθε: aor. ἔρχομαι
 5 ἐνταῦθα δὴ: *just then, exactly then*
 εἰς καλὸν: *at the right (moment)*; i.e. at the fine moment
 6 αἰρετέον (ἐστί): *must...*; 'is to be...' verbal

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, ordinary; public, 3
 κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4
 πάρ-οδος, ὁ: passage, entrance, approach, 4
 περι-ίστημι: to circle around, encircle, 1
 προσ-βάλλω: to attack, strike against, dash 3
 στρατία, ἡ: an army, expedition, land force, 4
 τάξις, -εως, ἡ: unit, squadron; battle array, 7

- adj. + missing verb εἰμί often expresses obligation or necessity
 τῇ...στρατιᾷ...ἔστι: dat. of possession
 7 ληψόμεθα: fut. mid. λαμβάνω, translate as present with future sense
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ: *just then, exactly then*
 κοινῇ: *in common*; dat. of manner
 8 τοῦ Ξενοφώντος ἐρωτῶντος: gen. abs.
 τί...εἴη: *what...*; ind. question with opt. in secondary seq. εἰμί
 τὸ κωλύον: *the thing...*; neut. sg. pple predicate
 9 εἰσελθεῖν: *from...*; aor. inf. following a verb of hindering
 ἐστὶν: *there is...*
 ἣν: *which...*

ὁρᾶς· ὅταν δέ τις ταύτῃ πειρᾶται παριέναι, κυλίνδουσι λίθους 10
 ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας· ὃς δ' ἂν καταληφθῇ,
 οὕτω διατίθεται. ἅμα δ' ἔδειξε συντετριμμένους ἀνθρώπους
 καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. 5. ἦν δὲ τοὺς λίθους ἀναλώσωσιν,
 ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει παριέναι; οὐ γὰρ
 δὴ ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ὁρῶμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους, 15
 καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὥπλισμένους. 6. τὸ δὲ χωρίον, ὡς καὶ
 σὺ ὁρᾶς, σχεδὸν τρία ἡμίπλεθρά ἐστιν ὃ δεῖ βαλλομένους
 διελθεῖν· τούτου δὲ ὅσον πλέθρον δασὺ πίτυσι διαλειπούσαις

ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 8
 ἀν-αλίσκω: to use up, to spend, squander, 3
 βάλλω: to throw, cast; shoot, 3
 δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick; thicket (bush/woods), 5
 δείκνυμι: to show, indicate, 4
 δια-λείπω: to leave or set at intervals, 3
 δια-τίθημι: treat, handle, arrange; dispose, 1
 δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7
 ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 4
 ἡμί-πλεθρον, τό: half of a plethron (100 ft.), 2
 κυλίνδω: to roll; wallow, wander, 5

ὀπλίζω: to make ready, arm, equip, 2
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 5
 πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 7
 πίτυς, -υος, ἡ: pine tree, 1
 πλέθρον, τό: a plethron (=100 feet), 3
 πλευρά, ἡ: a rib, side, 2
 σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 2
 συν-τρίβω: to crush, shatter, rub together, 1
 σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 3
 ὑπερ-έχω: to hold over, hold above, 1

10 ὅταν...πειρᾶται: general temporal
 clause, pres. subj. α-contract verb
 ταύτῃ: *in this way*; dat. of manner
 παριέναι: inf. παρέρχομαι
 11 ὑπερεχούσης: *overhanging*; i.e. projecting
 ὃς...καταληφθῇ: *whoever...*; general
 relative clause ἄν + 3s aor. pass. subj.
 καταλαμβάνω; i.e. by the stones
 12 οὕτω: i.e. in the following way
 ἔδειξε: aor. δείκνυμι
 συντετριμμένους: pf. pass. pple
 13 καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς: *both in...and in...*;
 acc. of respect; σκέλε-α
 ἦν...ἀναλώσωσιν: *if...*; ἔάν + 3s aor. subj.
 ἀναλίσκω
 14 ἄλλο τι ἢ...: *Nothing prevents (us) from
 passing, does it?*; '(does anything other
 than nothing...?)' ἄλλο τι ἢ introduces a
 yes/no question expecting an yes response

παριέναι: inf. παρέρχομαι
 15 ὁρῶμεν: supply an obj.: 'anything'
 ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου: i.e. side
 εἰ μὴ: *except*
 16 τούτων: partitive gen.
 ὥπλισμένους: pf. pass. pple
 τὸ δὲ χωρίον: *the area*; i.e. the distance,
 not 'stronghold' as earlier in the narrative
 ὡς: *as...*; parenthetical
 17 ὃ: *which...*; χωρίον is antecedent
 βαλλομένους: (*while*)...; circumstantial use
 of pass. pple βάλλω, 'shoot at' or 'pelt'
 18 διελθεῖν: aor inf. διαέρχομαι, add ἡμᾶς as
 acc. subject
 τούτου (χωρίου): *of this (area/distance)*
 ὅσον πλέθρον (ἐστίν) δασύ: *as much as...*;
 ὅσον is a relative adj.; add a linking verb
 πίτυσι...: dat. of means

μεγάλαις, ἀνθ' ὧν ἑστηκότες ἄνδρες τί ἂν πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ
 τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδομένων; τὸ λοιπὸν 20
 οὖν γίνεταί ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον, ὃ δεῖ ὅταν λωφήσωσιν οἱ λίθοι
 παραδραμεῖν.' 7. 'ἀλλὰ εὐθύς,' ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, 'ἐπειδὴν
 ἀρξώμεθα εἰς τὸ δασὺ προσιέναι, φέρονται οἱ λίθοι πολλοί.'
 'αὐτὸ ἂν,' ἔφη, 'τὸ δέον εἶη· θᾶττον γὰρ ἀναλώσουσι τοὺς
 λίθους. ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ἔνθεν ἡμῖν μικρόν τι παραδραμεῖν 25
 ἔσται, ἣν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον, ἣν βουλώμεθα.'

ἀν-αλίσκω: to use up, to spend, squander, 3
 ἀντί: instead of, in place of (+ gen.), 3
 δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick; thicket (bush/woods), 5
 ἐπειδὴν: whenever, 5
 ἡμεῖς: we, 5
 ἡμί-πλεθρον, τό: half of a plethron (100 ft.), 2
 θάττων, θᾶττον: faster, quicker, swifter, 3
 ἵστημι: make stand, set up, stop, establish, 7

κυλίνδω: to roll; wallow, wander, 5
 λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 6
 λωφάω: to abate, take rest, recover from, 1
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 1
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 5
 παρα-τρέχω: to run past, run along, 3
 πάσχω: to suffer, experience, 3
 ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 3

19 μεγάλαις: tall
 ἀνθ' ὧν: behind which...; relative
 ἑστηκότες: pf. pple ἵστημι
 τί ἂν πάσχοιεν...: what would...;
 interrogative pronoun; 3p potential opt.
 ἄνδρες is subject
 ὑπὸ: because of...; gen. of cause
 20 φερομένων: flying; 'bearing along' mid.
 pple
 21 ὡς: nearly; 'as if,' in approximation
 ὃ: which...; relative
 ὅταν λωφήσωσιν: whenever...; ἂν + aor.
 subj. in a general temporal clause
 22 παραδραμεῖν: aor. inf. παρατρέχω
 23 ἀρξώμεθα: ἂν + aor. subj. in a general
 temporal clause
 προσιέναι: inf. προσέρχομαι
 φέρονται: are flying; 'are bearing along'
 likely pres. mid. but possibly pres.
 passive: 'are carried along;' the emphasis is
 on the quantity of stones: πολλοί

24 ἔφη: (Xenophon) said; impf. φημί
 ἀν...εἶη: (this) would...; potential opt. εἰμί
 the understood subject is the number of
 rocks flying in the previous sentence
 τὸ δέον: what is needed; 'the think lacking'
 neuter pple,
 θᾶττον: comparative adverb
 ἀναλώσουσι: fut. ἀναλίσκω
 25 πορευώμεθα: Let us...; hortatory subj.
 ἔνθεν: (to the place) from which
 ἡμῖν: dat. of interest
 μικρόν τι: for...; acc. of extent
 παραδραμεῖν: aor. inf. παρατρέχω
 26 ἔσται: it will be possible; fut. εἰμί
 ἣν δυνώμεθα: if...; ἔάν, fut. more vivid
 condition (εἰ + ἂν + subj., fut.)
 ῥάδιον (ἔσται): (it will be)...; add verb
 ἣν: if...; ἔάν + subj., fut. more vivid
 condition

8. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλ- 1
 λίμαχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία ἦν
 τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγῶν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι
 λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπῆλθον
 ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἐβδομήκοντα, οὐχ ἄθροοι ἀλλὰ 5
 καθ' ἓνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. 9. Ἀγασίας δὲ
 ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς καὶ οὗτοι τῶν
 ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν
 ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις

Ἀγασίας, ὁ: Agasias (person), 3

ἄθροοι, -αι, -α: in a mass, all together, 4

ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 8

Ἀριστώνυμος, ὁ: Aristonymus (person), 5

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 7

δένδρον, τό: tree, 6

ἐβδομήκοντα: seventy, 1

εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 8

2 τούτου: *this one's*; 'of Callimachus' gen.
as predicate

ἡγεμονία: i.e. officer of the day; the unit
leading the column of soldiers changed
daily

3 ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ: dat. of time when

4 ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ: i.e. place

ἀπῆλθον: aor. ἀπέρχομαι

5 ὑπὸ: *beneath*...; the men are behind the
trees to avoid the rocks, acc. place to which

ἔξω: out of (+ gen.); adv. outside, 5

ἐφ-ίστημι: set up, place up, 1

ἡγεμονία, ἡ: authority, leadership, 1

Καλλίμαχος, ὁ: Callimachus, 5

Μεθυδριεύς, ὁ: of Methydrium, 4

Παρράσιος -α, -ον: of Parrhesia; Parrhesian 2

Στυμφάλιος, -η, -ον: of Stymphalos (city), 4

φυλάττω: to keep watch, keep guard, 6

ὥς: *nearly*; 'as if,' in approximation

καθ' ἓνα: *one by one*; 'by one(s)' κατὰ
+ acc. εἷς; κατὰ is distributive in sense

6 ὥς: *as*...; clause of comparison

8 ὄντες: pple εἶμι

ἐφέστασαν: plpf. ἐφίστημι; (note:
'had stood' can mean 'was standing')

9 ἦν: *it was possible*; impf. εἶμι

ἀσφαλῶς: adv. modifies the following inf.
ἐστάναι

ἐστάναι πλέον ἢ τὸν ἓνα λόχον. 10. ἔνθα δὴ Καλλίμαχος 10
 μηχανάται τι· προύτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν αὐτὸς
 δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνέχαζεν
 εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης δὲ τῆς προδρομῆς πλέον ἢ δέκα ἄμαξαι
 πετρῶν ἀνηλίσκοντο. 11. ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας ὡς ὄρᾳ τὸν Καλλί-
 μαχον ᾧ ἐποίει τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ 15
 πρῶτος παραδράμῃ εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστῶνυμον
 πλησίον ὄντα παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα,
 ἐταίρους ὄντας, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα χωρεῖ αὐτός, καὶ παρέρ-

Ἀγασίας, ὁ: Agasias (person), 3
 ἄμαξῃ, ἡ: a wagon, cart, 1
 ἀν-αλίσκω: to use up, to spend, squander, 3
 ἀνα-χάζω: to draw back, recoil, 2
 Ἀριστῶνυμος, ὁ: Aristonymus (person), 5
 βῆμα, -ατος, τό: step, pace, 1
 δεῖδω: to fear, 5
 δέκα: ten, 7
 δένδρον, τό: tree, 6
 ἐταῖρος, ὁ: comrade, companion, mate, 2
 εὐ-πετής, -ές: easy, without trouble, 2
 Εὐρύλοχος, ὁ: Eurylochus, 3

10 ἐστάναι: pf. inf. ἵστημι
 ἓνα: acc. sg. εἷς
 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then, exactly then*
 11 προύτρεχεν: προ(έ)τρεχεν, impf.
 ὑ(πὸ) ᾧ: under...; relative clause
 αὐτός: *he himself*; intensive pronoun
 δύο...βήματα: *for...*; acc. of extent
 12 ἐπειδὴ φέροντο: *whenever...flew*; 'were bearing along;' past general temporal clause with pres. mid. opt.
 ἀνέχαζεν: *would...*; iterative impf.
 13 ἐφ': *in the case of...*
 ἄμαξαι: i.e. cart-sized loads
 14 ἀνηλίσκοντο: iterative impf. pass.
 ὡς: *when, as*
 τὸν Καλλίμαχον...θεώμενον: *the entire*

θεάομαι: to see, gaze at, watch, 2
 ἵστημι: make stand, set up, stop, establish, 7
 Καλλίμαχος, ὁ: Callimachus, 5
 Λουσιεύς, -έως, ὁ: of Lusi, Lusean, 3
 μηχανάομαι: to contrive, devise, 1
 παρα-καλέω: to call, summon, 1
 παρα-τρέχω: to run beside, run past, 3
 πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 5
 πρό-δρομή, ἡ: assail, attack, running forth, 1
 προ-τρέχω: to run forward, 1
 χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 3

army...; ind. disc. (acc. + pple),
 στράτευμα is acc. subj.
 τὸν Καλλίμαχον ᾧ ἐποίει: obj. of
 θεώμενον; Callimachus is used
 proleptically and should be the subject
 of ἐποίει
 15 δείσας: aor. pple
 μὴ οὐ: *that...not*; 'lest not,' neg. fearing
 clause; μὴ alone introduces a positive
 clause; 3s aor. subj. παρατρέχω
 16 πρῶτος: i.e. he be the first to...
 οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ: *not even...nor...nor*
 17 ὄντα: acc. sg. pple εἶμι
 παρακαλέσας: nom. sg. aor. pple
 18 χωρεῖ: *moves forward, advances*
 αὐτός: i.e. by himself, alone; i.e. Agasias

χεται πάντας. 12. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὀρᾷ αὐτὸν παριόντα,
ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἵτιος· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ αὐτοὺς 20
Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λου-
σιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς καὶ διηγωνί-
ζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως ἐρίζοντες αἰροῦσι τὸ χωρίον.
ὡς γὰρ ἅπαξ εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἄνωθεν ἠνέχθη.
13. ἐνταῦθα δὴ δεινὸν ἦν θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι 25

αἰρέω: seize, take; *mid.* choose, 3
ἀντι-ποιέω: to do in rivalry for (gen), 1
ἄνω-θεν: from above, from on high, 1
ἅπαξ: once, once only, once for all, 2
ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, virtue, 1
Ἀριστώνυμος, ὁ: Aristonymus (person), 5
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 7
δεινός, -ή, -όν: skillful, clever; terrible, 3
δι-αγωνίζομαι: to contend against, 1
εἰς-τρέχω: to run in, 1

19 ὡς: *as, when*
αὐτὸν: i.e. Agasias
παριόντα: acc. sg. pple παρέρχομαι
20 αὐτοῦ: *his*; possessive, not intensive
τῆς ἵτιος: *by...*; partitive gen. governed by
a verb of grabbing
ἐν δὲ τούτῳ: *meanwhile*; 'in this (time)'
22 ἀρετῆς: gen. with main verb
πρὸς: *against...*

ἐπι-λαμβάνω: to lay hold of, take on, 2
ἐρίζω: to contend, quarrel, wrangle, strive, 1
Εὐρύλοχος, ὁ: Eurylochus, 3
θέαμα, -ατος, τό: sight, spectacle, 1
ἵτις, -υος, ἡ: rim (of a shield); shield, 1
Καλλίμαχος, ὁ: Callimachus, 5
Λουσιεύς, -έως, ὁ: of Lusi, Lusean, 3
Μεθυδριεύς, ὁ: of Methydrium, 4
παρα-θέω: to run alongside, run past, 1
ῥίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3

23 χωρίον: *stronghold*
24 ὡς: *as, when*
εἰσέδραμον: 3rd pl. aor. εἰστρέχω
ἠνέχθη: *were borne along*; i.e. flew, 3s
aor. pass. φέρω
25 ἐνταῦθα δὴ: *just then*
ῥίπτουσαι: i.e. off the rock face, fem.
nom. pl. pple has τὰ παιδιά as object

τὰ παῖδιά εἰτα ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύ- 1
 τως. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδὼν τινα
 θέοντα ὡς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτὸν στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν ἐπιλαμ-
 βάνεται ὡς κωλύσων· 14. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπᾶται, καὶ ἀμφοτέροι
 ὥχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπέθανον. ἐντεῦθεν 5
 ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ ὄνοι
 πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

15. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς ἑπτὰ
 παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὧν διήλθον ἀλκιμώ-

Αἰνείας, ὁ: Aeneas, 1

ἀλκιμος, -ον: stout, brave, 2

ἀμφοτέρος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 2

δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7

εἴτα: then, next, and so, therefore, 6

ἐπι-καταρριπτέω: throw down in addition, 1

ἐπι-λαμβάνω: to lay hold of, take on, 2

ἐπι-σπᾶω: to drag, draw in, 1

ἑπτὰ: seven, 5

οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 7

ὄνος, ὁ, ἡ: a mule, 1

παιδίον, τό: a little or young child, child, 1

πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 3

πεντήκοντα: fifty, 1

πρό-βατα, τά: sheep, flocks, 1

ρίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3

στολή, ἡ: apparel, armament, 2

Στυμφάλιος, -η, -ον: of Stymphalos (city), 4

Χάλυψ, -υβος, ὁ: Chalybian, 4

ὡς-αὐτως: in the same manner, just so, 1

1 ἐπικατερρίπτουν: 3p impf.

2 ἐνταῦθα δὴ: *just then*

ἰδὼν: nom. sg. aor. pple ὁράω

3 ὡς ῥίψοντα: *so that...*; 'so as...' ὡς + fut. pple expresses purpose, ῥίπτω

4 ὡς κωλύσων: *so that...*; 'so as...' ὡς + fut. pple again expressing purpose

ὁ δὲ: *and he*; i.e. the enemy jumping

αὐτὸν: i.e. Aeneas

5 ὥχοντο: impf. ὀίχομαι

κατὰ: *down from...*

ἀπέθανον: aor. ἀποθνήσκω

6 ἐλήφθησαν: 3p aor. pass. λαμβάνω

8 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.

πορεύομαι: translate in active

διὰ Χαλύβων: *through (the land of) the Chalybians*

σταθμούς...παρασάγγας: *for...*; acc. of extent

ὧν διήλθον: (*of those*) *whom...*; (ἐκείνων)

οὗς, relative clause; the acc. pl. pronoun is attracted into the gen. of the missing antecedent (partitive gen.)

ἀλκιμώτατοι: superlative

τατοι, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ θώρακας λινοὺς μέχρι 10
 τοῦ ἥτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πτερύγων σπάρτα πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα.
 16. εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη καὶ παρὰ τὴν ζώνην μαχαίριον
 ὅσον ξυήλην Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ ἔσφαττον ὦν κρατεῖν δύναιτο,
 καὶ ἀποτεμόντες ἂν τὰς κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ
 ἦδον καὶ ἐχόρευον ὅποτε οἱ πολέμοι αὐτοὺς ὀψεσθαι ἔμελ- 15
 λον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων μίαν
 λόγχην ἔχον. 17. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ
 παρέλθοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἶποντο αἰὲ μαχούμενοι. ᾧκουν

ἀεὶ: always, forever, in every case, 6
 αἶδω: to sing, chant, 2
 ἀντὶ: instead of, in place of (+ gen.), 3
 ἀπο-τέμνω: to cut off, sever, 1
 δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: spearshaft; pole, stem, 4
 ἐμ-μένω: to remain in, abide in, 1
 ζώνη, ἡ: belt, girdle, 1 ἥτρον, τό: groin, 1
 θώραξ, θώρακος, ὁ: breastplate, corset, 2
 κεφαλή, ἡ: the head, 4
 κνημῖς, -ίδος, ἡ: greave, leggings, 1
 κράνος, -εος, τό: a helmet, 1
 κρατέω: to conquer, overpower (gen), 1
 Λακωνικός, -ή, -όν: Laconian, of Laconia, 2
 λίνεος, , ὁ: linen, 1
 λόγχη, ἡ: spearhead; spear, lance, 4

10 εἰς χεῖρας: *hand-to-hand*; or 'to blows'
 ἦσαν: impf. ἔρχομαι
 11 ἀντὶ...πτερύγων: *in place of flaps*
 ἐστραμμένα: pf. pass. pple στρέφω; i.e.
 plaited or braided
 12 κράνη: κράνε-α
 παρὰ τὴν ζώνην: *on...*
 13 ὅσον: *as long as*
 ᾧ: *by which...*; relative, dat. of means
 ὦν... δύναιτο: *whoever...*; 3p pres. opt.
 in a general relative clause; gen. obj. of
 κρατεῖν; the missing antecedent is acc. obj.
 14 ἀποτεμόντες (καὶ) ἔχοντες: supply καὶ
 ἂν...ἐπορεύοντο: *they would...*; or 'they
 used to...' ἂν + ind. here indicates
 customary past action (S1790)
 15 ἦδον: *would...*; customary impf. αἶδω

μαχαίριον, τό: knife, (little) dagger), 1
 μέλλω: to be about to, intend to, 2
 μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
 ξυήλη, ἡ: whittling knife (to make a javelin) 2
 οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5
 πεντε-καί-δεκα: fifteen, 5
 πῆχυς, ὁ: cubit (up to elbow), forearm, 1
 πόλις, -ατος, τό: city, town, 1
 πτέρυξ, -υγος, ὁ: wing, flap, 1
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: thick, close-packed, 2
 σπάρτον, τό: cord, rope, 1
 στρέφω: to turn, wheel around; twist, 3
 σφάττω: to slay, slaughter, 2
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: hand, 2
 χορεύω: to dance, 1

ἐχόρευον: *would...*; customary impf.
 ὀψεσθαι: fut. dep. inf. ὁράω; μέλλω
 usually governs a fut. inf.
 16 ὥς: *nearly*; 'as if,' in approximation
 πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων: *of...*; gen. measure
 μίαν λόγχην: *a single spearpoint*; in
 contrast to Greek spears, which have a
 sharp spike on the butt-end for counter-
 balance and planting a spear in the ground
 17 ἔχον: neuter pple modifies neuter δόρυ
 ἐνέμενον: 3p impf. ἐμ-μένω
 ἐπεὶ...παρέλθοιεν: *whenever...*; past
 general temporal clause, aor. opt.
 παρέρχομαι
 18 εἶποντο: *would...*; impf. ἔπομαι
 μαχούμενοι: μαχεόμενοι, fut. pple
 ᾧκουν: ᾧκεον, impf. οἰκέω

δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομ-
 σμένοι ἦσαν· ὥστε μηδὲν λαμβάνειν αὐτόθεν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, 20
 ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν ἃ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον.
 18. ἐκ τούτων οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ Ἄρπασον ποταμόν,
 εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Σκυ-
 θηνῶν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου
 εἰς κώμας· ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. 25
 19. ἐντεῦθεν διήλθον σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι

ἀνα-κομίζω: to bring back, store up, 2
 Ἄρπασος, ὁ: Harpasus (river), 1
 αὐτό-θεν: from the very spot or moment, 2
 δια-τρέφω: to nourish, feed continually, 1
 δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 7
 εἴκοσι: twenty, 5
 ἐπι-σιτίζομαι: furnish oneself with food, 1
 εὖρος, τό: breadth, width, 3

κτῆνος, -εος, τό: herd, flock, 3
 μηδ-εἰς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 2
 ὄχυρός, -ή, -όν: secure, strong, firm, 1
 πλέθρον, τό: a plethron (=100 feet), 3
 Σκυθηνοί, οἱ: Scythians, 2
 Ταόχοι, οἱ: Taochians, 5
 τέτταρες, -α: four, 6

19 ὄχυροῖς: i.e. positions, 'strongholds'
 ἐν τούτοις: ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς
 ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν: periphrastic plpf.
 mid. (pf. mid. ppl + impf. εἰμί)
 20 ὥστε...: *so that...*; result clause, μηδὲν
 is acc. obj., τοὺς Ἕλληνας is acc. subject
 21 διετράφησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 τοῖς κτήνεσιν: dat. of means
 22 ἀφίκοντο: aor. ἀφικνέομαι
 ἐπὶ: *to...*

23 εὖρος: *in...*; acc. of respect
 τεττάρων πλέθρων: *of...*; gen. of measure
 modifying Ἄρπασον ποταμόν
 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 πορεύομαι: translate in the active
 24 σταθμούς...παρασάγγας: *for...*; acc. of
 extent
 25 ἔμειναν: aor. μένω
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς: acc. of duration of time

πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο 1
 Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης †τῆς χώρας† ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἑλλησιν
 ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς ἐαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι
 αὐτούς. 20. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν
 εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή, τεθνάναι 5
 ἐπηγγείλατο. καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλλεν εἰς τὴν
 ἐαυτοῦ πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο αἰθεῖν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν
 χώραν· ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ τῆς
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας. 21. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ

αἶθω: to light up, kindle; burn, 1
 Γυμνιάς, ὁ: Gymnias (town), 1
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 2
 ἐμ-βάλλω: to put in, cast in, 2
 ἕνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.), 2
 ἐπ-αγγέλλω: to proclaim; promise, offer, 1
 εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 1
 εὖ-νοια, ἡ: goodwill, favor, affection, 1
 θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 7

θυήσκω: to die, 3
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 3
 ὅ-θεν: from where, from which, 2
 οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5
 παρα-κελεύομαι: to order, urge, encourage, 2
 πέμπω: send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 7
 πέντε: five, 4
 πόλις, ἡ: a city, 3
 φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, 1

- 1 οἰκουμένην: *inhabited*
- ἐκαλεῖτο: *ἐκαλέετο*, impf. pass.
- 2 ὁ ἄρχων: *leader*; i.e. of the town
- 3 ὅπως...ἄγοι: *so that...*; purpose with opt.
in secondary seq.
ἐαυτῶν: *of his own*; the archon's people
- 4 ἐλθὼν: aor. ppl. ἔρχομαι
ἐκεῖνος: i.e. the guide
ἄξει: fut. ἄγω
πέντε ἡμερῶν: *within...*; gen. time within
- 5 ὄψονται: fut. deponent ὁράω
εἰ δὲ μή: ellipsis, assume the entire previous clause
τεθνάναι: pf. inf. θυήσκω; the guide agrees to die if he does not succeed to lead them to

- the sea
- 6 ἐπηγγείλατο: aor.
- ἡγούμενος: *guiding*
- ἐνέβαλλεν: *he cast (the Greeks) into...*;
i.e. led them into
- τὴν πολεμίαν (χώραν)
- 7 ᾧ καὶ: *by this in fact*; 'by which in fact,'
dat. of cause; καὶ is adverbial
- 8 ὅτι...ἔλθοι: *that...*; ind. disc. with aor. opt.
ἔρχομαι in secondary seq.; i.e. that the
guide brought the Greeks on this particular
path to destroy the guide's enemies
- τῆς...εὐνοίας (ἕνεκα): add the preposition
- 9 Ἑλλήνων: *for...*; or 'toward,' objective
genitive

πέμπτη ἡμέρα· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ 10
 πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους καὶ κατείδον τὴν θάλατταν,
 κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. 22. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ
 ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾤθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολε-
 μίους· εἶποντο γὰρ ὅπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης χώρας, καὶ
 αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτεινάν τέ τινας καὶ ἐξώγρησαν 15
 ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα ἔλαβον δασιῶν βοῶν ὠμο-
 βόεια ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν. 23. ἐπειδὴ δὲ βοὴ πλείων τε ἐγένετο
 καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ

αἰεῖ: always, forever, in every case, 6

ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 4

βοή, ἦ: shout, cry, 2

γέρον, τό: wicker-work; wicker-shield, 6

δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick; thicket (bush/woods), 5

δρόμος, ὁ: run, running, flight; race course, 5

ἐγγύ-θεν: from nearby, from near, 1

εἴκοσι: twenty, 5

ἔμ-προσθεν: in front, before, 5

ἐνέδρα, ἡ: a sitting (or lying) in ambush, 1

ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon; attack, 5

ἐπι-τίθμι: to put upon; add; set upon, attack 4

ζωγρέω: to take alive, take captive, 1

θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 7

Θήχης, ὁ: Theces (mtn.), 1

καθ-οράω: to look down, perceive, 7

κραυγή, ἡ: shouting, crying, screaming, 3

οἶομαι: to suppose, think, imagine, 3

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 1

πέμπτος, -η, -ον: fifth, 1

ὠμοβόειος, -α, -ον: of raw oxhide, 2

10 πέμπτη ἡμέρα: dat. of time when

τῷ ὄρει-ι: dat. of possession ὄρος with
 impf. εἰμί

11 κατείδον: aor. καθοράω

13 ᾤθησαν: aor. pass. dep. οἶομαι

ἄλλους...ἐπιτίθεσθαι: *that...*; ind. disc.

ἄλλους πολεμίους is acc. subject

14 εἶποντο: impf. ἔπομαι; supply 'enemies'
 as subject

15 αὐτῶν: i.e. enemies; partitive with τινάς

16 ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι: (*by*)...; causal pple

ἔλαβον: *they took*

δασιῶν βοῶν: gen. of material

ἀμφί: *about...*; in approximation

17 πλείων: *louder*; predicate adj.

18 ἐγγύτερον: comparative adv.

αἰεῖ: *constantly, continuously*

οἱ...ἐπιόντες: *those coming up...*; i.e. the
 Greeks who crest the hill and see the sea;
 ἐπέρχομαι

δρόμῳ: *in a run*; dat. of manner

βοώντας καὶ πολλῷ μείζων ἐγένετο ἢ βοή ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους
ἐγίνοντο, 24. ἐδόκει δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ 20
ἀναβὰς ἐφ’ ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἀναλαβὼν
παρεβόηθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοώντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν
‘θάλαττα θάλαττα’ καὶ παρεγγυώντων. ἔνθα δὴ ἔθεον πάντες
καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἡλαύνετο καὶ οἱ

ἀνα-λαμβάνω: to take up, find, resume, 1

βοάω: to shout, cry outloud, 5

βοή, ἦ: shout, cry, 2

ἐλαύνω: to march, ride, drive, 2

θάλαττα, ἦ: the sea, 7

19 πολλῷ: *much*; ‘by much,’ dat. of degree
of difference

μείζων: i.e. louder

ὅσῳ δὴ: *by exactly as much as...*; dat. of
degree of difference

πλείο(ν)ες: *more numerous*; pred. nom.

20 ἐγίνοντο: *they...*; i.e. Greek soldiers

δὴ: *then, accordingly*

μείζον τι: i.e. *important*; nom. pred.

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι: dat. of reference (from his
viewpoint)

21 ἀναβὰς: nom. sg. aor. pple ἀναβαίνω

Λύκιος, ὁ: Lycius, 3

μείζων, -ον (-ονος): greater, 4

παρα-βοηθέω: to come to help, 1

παρ-εγγυάω: to pass on word or command 5

τάχα: presently, quickly; perhaps, 2

ἐφ’: *upon...*

καί...καί: *both...and*; both acc. are objects
of the following aor. pple

22 παρεβόηθει: Xenophon assumes from the
shouting that his men are being attacked

τάχα δὴ: *very quickly*; δὴ is emphatic

βοώντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν: gen. obj. of
ἀκούουσι (gen. of source)

23 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then*

ἔθεον: *began to...*; inchoative impf.

24 ἡλαύνετο: *began to...*; inchoative impf.

ἵπποι. 25. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὲ 1
 περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς δα-
 κρύνοντες. καὶ ἐξαπίνης ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος οἱ στρα-
 τιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. 26. ἐνταῦθα 5
 ἀνεντίθεσαν δερμάτων πλήθος ὠμοβοείων καὶ βακτηρίας καὶ
 τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτὸς τε κατέτεμνε τὰ
 γέρρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. 27. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον καὶ
 φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρεικοὺς δέκα·

αἰχμ-άλωτος, -ον: taken by spear, captive, 4
 ἀνα-τίθημι: to set up, dedicate, attribute 1
 ἀπο-πέμπω: to send away, dismiss, 1
 ἀργυρέος, -α, -ον: of silver, 1
 βακτηρία, ἡ: staff, cane; (officer's) wand, 1
 γέρρον, τό: wicker-work; wicker-shield, 6
 δακρύω: to weep, shed tears, 1
 Δαρεϊκός, ὁ: Daric, gold coin (Persian), 1
 δέκα: ten, 7
 δέρμα, -ατος, τό: the skin, hide, 2
 δια-κελεύω: encourage (one another), urge 2
 δῶρον, τό: a gift, present, 1

ἐξαπίνης: suddenly, on the sudden 1
 κατα-τέμνω: to cut up, cut in pieces, 1
 κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, ordinary; public, 3
 κολωνός, ὁ: heap of stones; hilltop, hill, 1
 ὅστις, ἥτις, ὃ τι: whoever, which-, whatever, 4
 παρ-εγγυάω: to pass on word or command 5
 περι-βάλλω: to throw round; embrace, 1
 Περσικός, -ή, -όν: Persian, 4
 πλήθος, ἡ: crowd, multitude; size, 4
 σκευή, ἡ: attire, apparel; equipment, 2
 φιάλη, ἡ: bowl, vessel, 1
 ὠμοβόειος, -α, -ον: of raw oxhide, 2

1 ἐνταῦθα δὲ: *just at that point, just then*

3 ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος: *whoever in fact passing word; = οὗτινος, gen. sg. of ὅστις in a gen. abs.; perhaps an ellipsis for τινός, ὅστις δὴ ἦν, 'someone, whoever in fact it*

was'

8 δόντες: nom. pl. aor. pple δίδωμι
 ἀπὸ κοινοῦ: i.e. from what is held in common; parallel to the gift of rings made by individual soldiers below

ἤτει δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ 10
τῶν στρατιωτῶν. κώμην δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς οὗ σκηνήσουσι
καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἑσπέρα
ἐγένετο, ὥχeto τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπιών.

1. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ Μακρῶνων
σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ 15
ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς ὠρίζε τὴν τῶν Μακρῶνων καὶ
τὴν τῶν Σκυθηνῶν. 2. εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν χωρίον οἶον
χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ἐνέ-

αἰτέω: to ask, ask for, beg, 1

ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν: left, on the left, 4

δακτύλιος, -α, -ον: ring, 1

δείκνυμι: to show, indicate, 4

δέκα: ten, 7

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side, 5

ἐμ-βάλλω: to put in, cast in, 2

ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening, 2

Μάκρονες, οἱ: Macronians, 7

μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 5

οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 5

οἶχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 7

ὀρίζω: to divide, define, 3

οὗ: where, 2

σκηνέω: to encamp, bivouac, set up tents, 5

Σκυθηνοί, οἱ: Scythians, 2

χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 3

10 ἤτει: 3s impf. αἰτέω; the guide is subject
παρὰ: *from...*; gen. of source

11 δείξας: aor. pple

οὗ: *where...*; relative adv.

12 ἣν: *along which*

13 ὥχeto: impf. οἶχομαι

τῆς νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. of time within

ἀπιών: pple ἀπέρχομαι

14 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.

πορεύομαι: translate in active

15 σταθμούς... παρασάγγας: *for...*; acc. of extent

τῇ...ἡμέρᾳ: dat. of time when

16 ἀφίκοντο: aor. ἀφικνέομαι

τὴν (χωρὰν): *the land*

17 ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν: *over on the right*; 'above the right'

οἶον χαλεπώτατον: *as...as possible*;

'which sort (was) very harsh,' an idiom similar to ὥς, ὅτι + superlative

18 ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς: *on the left*; 'from the left'

εἰς ὃν: *into which*; acc. place to which

ἐνέβαλλεν: i.e. flows into

βαλλεν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει διαβῆναι. ἦν δὲ οὗτος δασὺς
 δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὗ, πυκνοῖς δέ. ταῦτ' ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον 20
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα
 ἐξελθεῖν. 3. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ
 τριχίνους χιτῶνας κατ' ἀντιπέραν τῆς διαβάσεως παρατε-
 ταγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἀλλήλοις διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν
 ποταμὸν ἔρριπτον· ἐξικνούντο γὰρ οὐ οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον οὐδέν. 25
 4. ἔνθα δὴ προσέρχεται Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελταστῶν ἀνὴρ

ἀντι-πέρα, ἡ: opposite shore, other side, 1
 βλάπτω: to harm, hurt, damage, 1
 γέρρον, τό: wicker-work; wicker-shield, 6
 δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick; thicket (bush/woods), 5
 δένδρ(ε)ον, τό: tree, 6
 διά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: a crossing, 3
 δια-κελεύω: encourage (on another), urge 2
 ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 1
 ἐξ-ικνέομαι: to arrive at, reach, 3
 κόπτω: to strike, hack, knock, 2

λόγχη, ἡ: spearhead; spear, lance, 4
 Μάκρωνες, οἱ: Macronians, 7
 ὀρίζω: to divide, define, 3
 παρα-τάττω: draw up in battle order, 5
 παχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: massive, 1
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: thick, close-packed, 2
 ῥίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3
 σπεύδω: to be eager, be urgent, 3
 τριχίνους, -η, -ον: of hair, of fur, 1
 χιτῶν, -ῶνος, ἡ: tunic, 1

19 ὁ ὀρίζων (ποταμός): *the dividing river*;
 i.e. the boundary river in line 16
 δι(α) οὗ: *over...*
 διαβῆναι: aor. inf.
 20 δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὗ, πυκνοῖς δέ:
with...; dat pl. of means;
 ταῦτ(α): *these (trees)*; obj. of ἔκοπτον
 21 ὡς τάχιστα: *as...as possible*; ὡς +
 superlative (here, superlative adv.)
 22 ἐξελθεῖν: aor. inf. ἐξέρχομαι

23 κατ(ὰ) ἀντιπέραν: *on the opposite shore*
 παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν: periphrastic plpf.
 pass. (pf. pass. ppl + impf. εἰμί)
 25 ἔρριπτον: impf. ῥίπτω
 ἐξικνούντο...οὐ: the λίθοι are subject
 οὐδὲ...οὐδέν: *nor...anything*
 26 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then*
 Ξενοφῶντι: *to...*; dat. of compound verb

Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλεκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γιγνώσκοι τὴν 1
 φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. ‘καὶ οἶμαι,’ ἔφη, ‘ἐμὴν ταύτην πατρίδα
 εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει, ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς διαλεχθῆναι.’
 5. ‘ἀλλ’ οὐδὲν κωλύει,’ ἔφη, ‘ἀλλὰ διαλέγου καὶ μάθε πρῶτον
 τίνες εἰσίν.’ οἱ δ’ εἶπον ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι ‘Μάκρωνες.’ ἐρώτα 5
 τοῖνυν,’ ἔφη, ‘αὐτοὺς τί ἀντιτετάχεται καὶ χρήζουσιν ἡμῖν
 πολέμιοι εἶναι.’ 6. οἱ δ’ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι ‘καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν
 ἡμετέραν χώραν ἔρχεσθε.’ λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 ὅτι ‘οὐ κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες

Ἀθῆναι, αἱ: Athens, 1

ἀντι-τάττω: to marshall or set opposite, 1

ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 3

γε: at least, at any rate; indeed, in fact, 3

γιγνώσκω: to come to know, learn, realize, 2

δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 5

δουλέω: to be a slave, 1

ἐμός, -ή, -όν: my, mine, 1

ἡμεῖς: we, 5

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 1

κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 5

Μάκρωνες, οἱ: Macronians, 7

μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 1

οἶμαι: to suppose, think, imagine, 3

πατρίς, -ίδος: fatherland, native land, 1

πολεμέω: wage war, make war, (+ dat.), 2

τοί-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 2

ὑμεῖς: you, 5

φάσκω: say, claim, speak, 2

φωνή, ἡ: speech, voice; dialect, 1

χρήζω: to need, lack; want, ask for, 1

1 Ἀθήνησι: locative, the city Athens is plural
 δεδουλεκέναι: *that he had...*; pf. act. inf.
 in secondary seq.

ὅτι γιγνώσκοι: *that...*; ind. disc. with opt.
 replacing indicative in secondary seq.;
 the Greek recognized the language of the
 Macronians as his native tongue

2 οἶμαι: οἶομαι

καί: *actually, in fact*; adv.

ἔφη: i.e. the former slave; impf. φημί

ταύτην...εἶναι: *that...*; ind. disc. with acc.
 subject; ἐμὴν πατρίδα is acc. predicate

3 κωλύει: add ‘me’ as object

διαλεχθῆναι: aor. pass. dep.

4 κωλύει: add ‘you’ as object; Xenophon is
 now talking

διαλέγου: διαλεγε(σ)ο, pres. mid. imper.

μάθε: aor. imper.

πρῶτον: adverbial acc.

5 τίνες εἰσίν: ind. question with 3p εἰμί

οἱ δ’: *and they...*; i.e. the Macronians

approached by the former slave

εἶπον: aor. λέγω

(αὐτοῦ) ἐρωτήσαντος: gen. abs., the
 missing noun αὐτοῦ, ‘him,’ refers to
 the former slave

ὅτι Μάκρωνες (εἶεν): *that...*; add linking
 verb

ἐρώτα: ἐρώταε, pres. imperative

6 ἔφη: Xenophon is talking to the former
 slave, who is acting as interpreter; φημί
 τί: *why...*; ind. question, ‘in respect to
 what?’

ἀντιτετάχεται: pf. mind.

7 οἱ δ’: *and they...*; again, the Macronians,
 καί: *actually, in fact*; adverbial

8 ἐκέλευον: supply “the former slave”

9 κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες: *not intending...*;
 ; a fut. pple expressing purpose; the idiom
 κακῶς ποιεῖν means ‘to treat poorly’;

γε emphasizes the preceding wor
 βασιλεῖ: *with...*; dat. of association

ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλόμεθα 10
 ἀφικέσθαι.⁷ ἡρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά.
 οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν. ἐντεῦθεν
 διδόασιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην τοῖς Ἑλλησιν,
 οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν
 πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφοτέρω. 15

8. μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συνεξέ-
 κοπτον τὴν τε ὁδὸν ὠδοποιοῦν ὥς διαβιβάσοντες ἐν μέσοις
 ἀναμειγμένοι τοῖς Ἑλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο

ἀγορά, ἡ: marketplace, exchange; assembly 2
 ἀμφοτέρω, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 2
 ἀνα-μίσγω: to mingle with, mix with, 1
 βαρβαρικός, -η, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 2
 δένδρον, τό: tree, 6
 δια-βιβάζω: to carry across, transport, 1
 Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ: Greece, 1
 Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Greek, Hellenic, 3
 ἐπι-μαρτύρομαι: appeal to, call as witness, 1
 θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 7

θεός, ὁ: a god, divinity, 3
 λόγχη, ἡ: spearhead; spear, lance, 4
 Μάκρόνες, οἱ: Macronians, 7
 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 5
 ὁδο-ποιέω: to make (a road), 1
 οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 5
 πιστός, -ή, -όν: trustworthy, loyal; credible 4
 συν-εκ-κόπτω: to help in cutting, 1

11 ἡρώτων: ἐρώταον, 3p impf. ἐρωτάω
 ἐκεῖνοι: the Macronians
 εἰ δοῖεν ἂν: *whether they would...*; ind.
 question, 3p aor. potential opt. δίδωμι
 τὰ πιστά: *pledges*
 12 ἔφασαν: aor. φημί; the Greeks are subject
 καὶ...καὶ... ἐθέλειν: *that they...both...and...*
 ind. disc., assume the subject of the main
 clause as acc. subject
 δοῦναι: aor. inf. δίδωμι
 13 διδόασιν: 3p pres.
 τοῖς Ἑλλησιν: dat. ind. obj.

14 Ἑλληνικὴν (λόγχην διδόασιν)
 15 πιστὰ: *pledges*
 16 τὰ πιστά: *pledges*
 17 ὥς διαβιβάσοντες: *so that...*; 'so as'
 ὥς + fut. pple expresses purpose; add
 the Greeks the object
 ἐν μέσοις... τοῖς Ἑλλησι: a single
 construction divided by a pple
 18 ἀναμειγμένοι: pf. mid. pple; i.e. engage
 or interact with
 οἶαν ἐδύναντο (παρέχειν): *such as...*;
 relative clause

παρείχον, καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ
 Κόλχων ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἑλληνας. 9. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος 20
 μέγα, προσβατὸν δέ· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι παρατε-
 ταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀντιπαρε-
 τάξαντο φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄζοντες πρὸς τὸ ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ
 ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευσασθαι συλλεγείσιν ὅπως ὡς
 κάλλιστα ἀγωνιοῦνται. 10. ἔλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοίη 25
 παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιῆσαι· ἡ μὲν γὰρ

ἀγωνίζομαι: to contend, compete, fight, 3
 ἀντι-παρα-τάττομαι: to draw up against, 1
 βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 5
 ἐπ-εἶτα: then, next, secondly, 4
 ἕως: until, as long as, 1
 καθ-ίστημι: to station, appoint; *intransitive*,
 stand, 4
 Καλλίμαχος, ὁ: Callimachus, 5
 Κόλχοι, οἱ: Colchians, 5

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 8
 ὄριον, τό: boundary, border, limit, 1
 παρ-άγω: to lead along, go alongside, 3
 παρα-τάττω: draw up in battle order, 5
 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 5
 παύω: to stop, make cease, 3
 προσ-βατός, -ή, -όν: accessible, 2
 συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 5

- 19 παρείχον: impf. παρέχω
 παρήγαγον: aor.; Marconians guided the
 Greeks through the territory
 τρισὶν: dat. pl. τρεῖς
 20 κατέστησαν: set; aor. the Marconians are
 subject
 ἦν: impf. εἰμί
 21 ἐπὶ...: upon...
 παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν: periphrastic plpf.
 pass. (pf. pass. pple + impf. εἰμί)
 22 τὸ πρῶτον: at first, first; adverbial acc.
 ὡς...ἄζοντες: so that...; 'so as...' ὡς +
 fut. pple. expressing purpose
 οὕτως: i.e. in formation
 24 ἔδοξε: it seemed best

- 24 συλλεγείσιν: with those...; dat. pl. aor.
 pass. pple
 ὅπως...ἀγωνιοῦνται: how...; ind.
 question with fut. mid.
 ὡς κάλλιστα: as...as possible; ὡς +
 superlative adv. καλῶς, 'well'
 25 ὅτι δοκοίη: ind. disc. with 3s opt. δοκέω,
 'seem best,' in secondary sequence
 26 παύσαντας: transitive with φάλαγγα
 ὀρθίους: in columns; i.e. single file
 ποιῆσαι: make (x) (y); inf. governs a double
 acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)
 ἡ μὲν γὰρ...: in the middle of ind. disc.,
 Xenophon slips into direct disc. (note the
 punctuation) with 1p verbs

φάλαγξ διασπασθήσεται εὐθύς· τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἄνοδον τῇ δὲ 1
 εὐοδον εὐρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ἀθυμίαν ποιήσει
 ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα ταύτην διεσπασμένην ὀρώσιν.
 11. ἔπειτα ἦν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν τεταγμένοι προσάγωμεν, περιτ-
 τεύσουσιν ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τοῖς περιττοῖς χρήσονται 5
 ὃ τι ἂν βούλωνται· ἐὰν δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγων τεταγμένοι ὦμεν,
 οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπεῖ ἡμῶν ἡ φάλαγξ ὑπὸ
 ἀθρόων καὶ βελῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δέ
 πη τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται. 12. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ

ἀθρόοι, -αι, -α: in a mass, all together, 4
 ἀ-θυμία ἢ: faintheartedness, discouragement 3
 ἄν-οδος, -ον: hard to pass, inaccessible, 1
 βέλος, -εος, τό: missile, arrow, dart, 2
 δια-κόπτω: to cut through, break in two, 2
 δια-σπάω: to pull apart, separate, 3
 ἐάν: εἰ ἂν, if (+ subj.), 2
 ἐμ-πίπτω: to fall upon, 1
 ἔπ-εῖτα: then, next, secondly, 4
 εὐ-οδος, -ον: easy to pass, accessible 3
 εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 4
 ἡμεῖς: we, 5

θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, strange, 2
 κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 5
 ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 5
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 5
 περιττεύω: to go beyond, outflank (gen) 1
 περιττός, -η, -ον: surplus, reserve, excess, 1
 πη: in some way, somehow, 2
 προσ-άγω: to bring to, attach; advance, 3
 τάττω: post, station, arrange, order, 6
 χράομαι: use, employ, enjoy, indulge (dat) 6

- 1 διασπασθήσεται: 3s fut. pass.
 τῇ μὲν...τῇ δέ: *here...there*
 2 εὐρήσομεν: 1p fut.
 ποιήσει: *will cause*
 3 ὅταν...ὀρώσιν: *whenever (the soldiers)...*;
 general temporal clause, pres. subj. ὀράω
 τεταγμένοι: pf. pass. pple τάττω
 ταύτην: i.e. φάλαγγα ; obj. of ὀρώσιν
 διεσπασμένην: pf. pass. pple
 4 ἔπειτα: *furthermore, next*
 ἦν...προσάγωμεν...χρήσονται: *if...*; ἐάν,
 fut. more vivid (εἰ ἂν + subj., fut.)
 ἐπὶ πολλῶν: *many deep*; 'in the case of
 many,' a phalanx with many men behind
 one another will not be wide in front
 τεταγμένοι: pf. pass. pple τάττω
 5 ἡμῶν: obj. of verb (gen. of comparison)
 τοῖς περιττοῖς: *surplus (troops)*; dat. obj.
 6 ὃ τι ἂν βούλωνται: *for whatever...*; the

- missing antecedent is inner acc. of the verb
 χρήσονται: 'make whatever (use)...'
 ἐάν...τεταγμένοι ὦμεν: periphrastic 1p pf.
 pass. subj. (pf. pass. pple + pres. subj. εἰμί)
 protasis in a mixed condition
 ἐπὶ ὀλίγων: *a few deep*; 'in the case of...'
 7 ἂν εἴη...εἰ διακοπεῖ: *would be...*, *if our*
phalanx should...; fut. less vivid condition
 (εἰ opt., ἂν + opt.)
 8 ὑπο...ἐμπεσόντων: *because of...*; gen. of
 cause and agent; supply 'us' as object; aor.
 pple ἐμπίπτω
 καὶ...καὶ...: *both... and...*
 εἰ...ἔσται,...ἔσται: an emotional fut. more
 vivid (εἰ fut., fut.), where a fut. replaces
 ἂν + subj. for heightened emotion
 8 τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι: *for...*; dat. of interest
 ἔσται: *it will be*; impersonal

ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους ποιησαμένους τοσοῦτον χωρίον κατα- 10
 σχεῖν διαλιπόντας τοῖς λόχοις ὅσον ἔξω τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους
 γενέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων· καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα τῆς
 τε τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω [οἱ ἔσχατοι λόχοι], καὶ
 ὀρθίους ἄγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσίασιν, ἥ τε
 ἂν εὐοδὸν ἦ, ταύτῃ ἕκαστος ἄξει [ὁ λόχος]. 13. καὶ εἷς τε τὸ 15
 διαλείπον οὐ ῥάδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμίοις εἰσελθεῖν ἔνθεν
 καὶ ἔνθεν λόχων ὄντων, διακόψαι τε οὐ ῥάδιον ἔσται λόχον
 ὀρθιον προσιόντα. ἂν τέ τις πιέζῃται τῶν λόχων, ὁ πλησίον

δια-κόπτω: to knock through, break in two, 2
 δια-λείπω: to leave or set at intervals, 3
 εἰσ-έρχομαι: to go to, approach; enter, 2
 ἔξω: out of (+ gen.); adv. outside, 5
 ἐσχατος, -η, -ον: extreme, last, furthest, 2
 εὐ-οδος, -ον: easy to pass, accessible, 3
 ἡμεῖς: we, 5
 κατ-έχω: to hold fast, take possession of, 7

κέρας, -ατος, τό: horn, wing (of an army), 2
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: best; strongest, 7
 οὐ-πω: not yet, 1
 πιέζω: press, weigh down, squeeze, 1
 πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 5
 ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 3
 τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οῦτο: so great, so much,
 so many, 3

- 10 (ἡμᾶς) ὀρθίους ...κατασχεῖν: *that (we)...*;
 add ἡμᾶς as acc. subject
 ὀρθίους: *in columns*; i.e. single file lines
 ποιησαμένους: *making (x) (y)*; governing a
 double acc.
 11 διαλιπόντας τοῖς λόχοις: *leaving the units
 at intervals*; aor. dat. of compound verb
 ὅσον...λόχους γενέσθαι: *so far as to...*;
 + acc. + inf. equiv. to a result clause; ὅσος
 can often mean 'enough for' or 'sufficient
 to' with an inf. (S2497)
 12 τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων: gen. obj. of ἔξω
 ἐσόμεθα: 1p fut. dep. εἰμί
 τῆς...φάλαγγος: gen. object of ἔξω
 [οἱ ἔσχατοι λόχοι]: Do not translate. The
 editor thinks this has been inserted later.
 14 ἡμῶν: *of us (captains)*; partitive gen.
 προσίασιν: 3p fut. προσέρχομαι
 ἥ...ταύτῃ: *in whichever way...in this way*;
 dat. of manner; ἥ is a relative pronoun and
 ταύτῃ is the antecedent

- 15 ἂν...ἦ: 3s pres. subj. εἰμί, general relative
 ἄξει: fut.
 τε...τε...τε...: *and...and...and...*;
 Xenophon unusually but repeatedly uses
 τε to connect sentences (D499, S2968)
 εἷς τε τὸ διαλείπον: *into the interval*; i. e.
 the space between columns; neut. sg. ppl
 16 ἔσται: *it will be...*; fut. deponent εἰμί
 τοῖς πολεμίοις: *for...*; dat. of interest
 εἰσελθεῖν: aor. inf. εἰσέρχομαι
 ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν: *on one side and the other*
 17 λόχων ὄντων: gen. abs.
 διακόψαι: aor. inf. διακόπτω
 λόχων: *each company/unit*; obj. of inf.
 18 ὀρθιον: *in a column*
 προσιόντα: acc. sg. ppl προσέρχομαι
 ἂν...πιέζῃται: *if...*; εἰμί, pres. pass. subj. in
 a fut. more vivid condition
 τῶν λόχων: partitive gen. with τις
 ὁ πλησίον (λόχος): *the (company) nearby*;
 adverbial acc....

Xenophon recommends forming a checkboard pattern of units—with intervals inbetween—to confront the single phalanx of the enemy. The Romans used this formation with great success.

βοηθήσει. ἦν τε εἰς πη δυνηθῇ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον
 ἀναβῆναι, οὐδείς μηκέτι μείνη τῶν πολεμίων.¹⁴ ταῦτα ἔδοξε, 20
 καὶ ἐποιοῦν ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπιῶν ἐπὶ
 τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· ἄνδρες,
 οὗτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὀράτε μόνοι ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδῶν τὸ μὴ ἦδη
 εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι σπεύδομεν· τούτους, ἦν πως δυνώμεθα,
 καὶ ὠμοὺς δεῖ καταφαγεῖν. 25

15. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς λόχους

βοηθέω: to come to aid, to assist, aid, 2

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side, 5

ἐμποδῶν: in the way, in one's path, 1

ἔτι: still, besides, further, 7

εὐ-ώνυμος, -ον: of good name; left (side), 3

ἡμεῖς: we, 5

κατα-εσθίω: to eat up, devour, 1

μηκέτι: no longer, no more, 1

μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 2

πάλαι: long ago, formerly, of old, 2

πη: in some way, somehow, 2

πως: somehow, in any way, 4

σπεύδω: to be eager, be urgent, 3

ὠμός, -ή, -όν: raw, uncooked, 1

19 ἦν...δυνηθῇ: *if...*; ἔάν, 3s aor. pass. dep.
 subj. in a mixed condition

τε: *and*; Xenophon throughout this
 passage employs τε to connect sentences
 (S2968)

εἷς...τῶν λόχων: nom. subj., partitive gen.

20 ἀναβῆναι: aor. inf. ἀναβαίνω

μηκετι μείνη: *Don't let ...*; or *'let...not...'* a
 prohibitive subj. (μὴ + aor. subj.); 3s aor.
 subj. μένω

ἔδοξε: *seemed best*

21 ὀρθίους: *in columns*; i.e. single file

ἀπιῶν: nom. sg. pplē ἀπέρχομαι;

Cheirisophus holds the right wing.
 Xenophon comes from a conference with
 Cheirisophus on the right and returns to his
 own troops on the left wing.

23 οὗτοί: i.e. the enemy

εἰσιν: 3p pres. εἰμί

οὓς: (*the ones*) *whom...*; relative

ἡμῖν: *for...*; dat. of interest

ἐμποδῶν τὸ μὴ ἦδη εἶναι: *in the way from*
(our) being now...; *'lest being...'* μὴ +
 inf. (or, as here, articular inf.) following
 verbs of hindering or their equivalent
 (S2740)

24 ἔνθα: *where...*; relative adv.

σπεύδομεν: *we have been hastening*; πάλαι
 + pres. is often equiv. to pf. progressive in
 English

ἦν...δυνώμεθα: *if...*; ἔάν + subj.

25 καταφαγεῖν: aor. inf. κατα-εσθίω; i.e.
 utterly destroy the enemy.

ὀρθίους ἐποιήσαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ 1
 τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν·
 τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ ἐποιήσαντο, τοὺς
 μὲν τοῦ εὐωνύμου ἔξω, τοὺς δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ
 μέσον, σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους. 16. ἐκ τούτου παρηγ- 5
 γύησαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι· εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανί-
 σαντες ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ
 οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς πελτασταὶ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω
 γενόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο· 17. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὥς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντι-

ἀντι-παρα-θέω: run out alongside opposite, 1

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side, 5

ἑκατόν: a hundred, 1

ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α: six hundred, 1

ἔξω: out of (+ gen.); adv. outside, 5

εὐχομαι: to pray, offer prayers, vow, 5

εὐ-ώνυμος, -ον: of good name; left (side), 3

1 ὀρθίους: *in columns*; i.e. single files

ἀμφί: *around*; + acc., in approximation

2 εἰς: *nearly*; 'up to,' in approximation

3 τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ... τοὺς δὲ...:
some...others...(still) others...

4 τοῦ δεξιοῦ (ἔξω)

κατὰ: *in...*

5 ἐκ τούτου: *after this*; 'from this'

8 τῆς...φάλαγγος: object of ἔξω; i.e. in a
 checkerboard pattern, the Greeks extended

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 5

ὀγδοήκοντα: eighty, 1

παιανίζω: to sing a paean, 4

παρ-εγγυάω: to pass on word or command 5

σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 3

τοξότης, ὁ: an archer, bowman, 4

τριχῇ: in threes, in three parts, 1

wider than the width of the enemy's
 phalanx

9 ὥς: *as, when*

εἶδον: aor. ὅραω

ἀντιπαραθέοντες: confronted with the
 Greek's extended frontline, the enemy
 stretched out their front line so that the
 troops on the ends would be beside (παρα)
 and opposite (ἀντί) the ends of the Greek
 troops

παραθέοντες οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον 10
 διεσπάσθησαν, καὶ πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ
 κενὸν ἐποίησαν. 18. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν πελτασταί, ὧν
 ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν, νομίσαντες φεύγειν ἀνακρα-
 γόντες ἔθρον· καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουνσι·
 συνεφέπετο δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν, ὧν ἦρχε 15
 Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος. 19. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι, ὥς ἤρξαντο θεῖν,
 οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλη ἐτράπετο. οἱ δὲ
 Ἕλληνες ἀναβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν πολλαῖς κώμαις

Αἰσχίνης, ὁ: Aeschines, 2
 Ἀκαρνάν, Ἀκαρνᾶνος, ὁ: Acarnian, 1
 ἀνα-κράζω: to cry out, shout, 3
 Ἀρκαδικός, -ή, -όν: Arcadian, 2
 δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side, 5
 δια-σπάω: to pull apart, separate, 3
 εὐ-ώνυμος, -ον: of good name; left (side), 3
 ἵστημι: make stand, set up, stop, establish, 7
 κενός, -ή, -όν: empty, 1
 Κλεάνωρ, ὁ: Cleanor, 2

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 5
 νομίζω: to believe, think, deem, 2
 ὀπλιτικός, -ή, -όν: of a hoplite; infantry, 2
 Ὀρχομένιος, -α, -ον: of Orchomenus, 1
 οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 1
 στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, take a position, 4
 συν-εφ-έπομαι: to follow after together, 1
 τρέπω: to turn; rout, 2
 φυγῇ, ἡ: flight, escape, exile, 3

10 ἀντιπαραθέοντες: see previous note
 οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ...: *some...others...*; the enemy
 ἐπὶ...: *to...*
 11 διεσπάσθησαν: aor. pass.
 πολὺ: *a majority*; neuter acc. sg.
 (ἐ)αυτῶν: reflexive
 12 ἐποίησεν: governing a double acc.
 κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικόν: *in the Arcadian division*
 ὧν: *whom...*; gen. obj. of ἄρχω
 13 φεύγειν: *that (the enemy)...*; ind. disc., take τοὺς πολεμίους as acc. subject
 14 ἔθρον: *began to...*; inchoative impf. θέω; the Arcadian peltasts are the subject
 οὗτοι: *these*; i.e. the Arcadian peltasts

15 συνεφέπετο: impf.
 αὐτοῖς: dat. of compound verb
 καὶ: *also*
 τὸ...ὀπλιτικόν: nom. subject
 ὧν: *whom...*; see line 12
 16 ὥς: *as, when*
 ἤρξαντο: the peltasts are subject
 17 ἔστησαν: aor. ἵστημι
 φυγῇ: *in...*; dat. of manner
 ἄλλος ἄλλη: *one in one direction, another in another direction*; dat. of manner; a common expression when juxtaposing two cases of ἄλλος
 ἐτράπετο: aor. mid. τρέπω
 18 ἀναβάντες: aor. ppl. ἀναβαίνω

καὶ τὰπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἐχούσαις. 20. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν
 ὃ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι, καὶ τῶν 20
 κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν στρατιωτῶν πάντες ἄφρονές τε
 ἐγίγνοντο καὶ ἤμουν καὶ κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς
 οὐδεὶς ἐδύνατο ἵστασθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες
 σφόδρα μεθύουσιν ἐώκεσαν, οἱ δὲ πολὺ μαινομένοις, οἱ δὲ
 καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. 21. ἔκειντο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ τροπῆς 25
 γεγενημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἀπέθανε
 μὲν οὐδεὶς, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν πῶς ὦραν ἀνεφρόνουν· τρίτῃ
 δὲ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

ἀ-θυμία ἡ: faintheartedness, discouragement 3
 ἄ-φρων, -ονος: senseless, foolish, 1
 ἀνα-φρονέω: to come to (their) senses, 1
 αὐτό-θι: on the very spot or moment, 2
 δια-χωρέω: run/pass through (as diarrhea), 1
 ἐμέω: to vomit, throw up, 1
 ἔοικα: to be like; seem like (dat) 1
 ἐσθίω: to eat, 3
 θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 1
 ἵστημι: make stand, set up, stop, establish, 7
 κάτω: downwards, below, 4
 κεῖμαι: to lie, lie down 2
 κηρίον, -ου, τό: honeycomb, 1

- 19 τὰ (ἐ)πιτήδεια
 ἐχούσαις: pple
 τὰ μὲν ἄλλα: *in other respects*; acc. respect
 οὐδὲν (ἐστὶ): *(there is)...*
 20 ὃ τι: neuter sg. ὅστις
 καί: *in fact, actually*; adverbial
 σμήνη: σμήνη-α
 21 τῶν κηρίων: partitive gen. obj. of ἔφαγον
 within the relative clause
 ἔφαγον: aor. ἐσθίω
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν: partitive with ὅσοι
 21 ἤμουν: ἡμεον, 3p impf. ἐμέω
 22 κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς: *it was running
 down through them*; i.e. they had diarrhea;
 an impersonal construction
 23 ὀλίγον: *a little*
 ἐδηδοκότες: pf. act. pple ἐσθίω

μαίνομαι: to be mad, be driven mad, crazy, 1
 μεθύω: to be drunk with wine, 1
 ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 1
 πῶς: somehow, in any way, 4
 σμήνος, -εος, τό: swarm of bees, beehive, 2
 σφόδρα: very, very much, exceedingly,
 earnestly, 1
 τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth, 1
 τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 4
 τροπή, ἡ: rout, turning, 1
 ὑστεραίᾳ, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 5
 φαρμακο-ποσία, ἡ: a drinking of medicine 1
 ὦρα, ἡ: season, time, period of time, 3

- 24 σφόδρα μεθύουσιν: *to (those)...*; dat. pl.
 pple
 ἐώκεσαν: plpf. ἔοικα + dat.
 οἱ δὲ πολὺ (ἐδηδοκότες): *but those...*
 μαινομένοις (ἐώκεσαν): *to (those)...*; dat.
 pl. pple, obj. of missing ἐώκεσαν
 οἱ δὲ (πολὺ ἐδηδοκότες): *and still others...*
 25 ἀποθνήσκουσιν (ἐώκεσαν): *to (those)...*
 dat. pl. pple, obj. of missing ἐώκεσαν
 ἔκειντο: impf.
 25 τροπῆς γεγενημένης: i.e. as if defeated
 and lying on the battlefield wounded and
 dead; gen. abs. pf. mid. γίγνομαι
 26 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ (ἡμέρᾳ): dat. of time when
 ἀπέθανε: aor. ἀποθνήσκω
 27 τρίτῃ...τετάρτῃ (ἡμέρᾳ): time when

22. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμούς παρασάγγας ἑπτά, 1
καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα
οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, Σινωπέων ἀποικίαν, ἐν
τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἀμφὶ τὰς τριά-
κοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων κώμαις· 23. κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώμενοι 5
ἐλήζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρέιχον τῷ στρατο-
πέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἑλληνας καὶ
ξένια ἔδοσαν βούς καὶ ἄλφιτα καὶ οἶνον. 24. συνδιεπράττοντο
δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα

ἀγορά, ἡ: marketplace, exchange; assembly 2

ἄλφιτον, τό: barley-meal, 2

ἀπ-οικία, ἡ: colony, 1

δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 7

Ἑλληνίς, -ίς, ἡ: Greek (fem. adj.), 1

ἑπτά: seven, 5

Εὐξείνιος, ὁ: Black sea, Euxine, Hospitable 1

θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 7

Κολχίς, Κολχίδος, ἡ: Colchis, 1

ληίζομαι: to carry off as loot, plunder 1

μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 5

ξένια, τά: gifts of friendship or hospitality, 2

οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5

οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 5

ὁρμάω: to set in motion, set out, begin, 2

παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 5

πλησίος, -ης, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 5

πόλις, ἡ: a city, 3

πόντος, ὁ: sea, 1

Σινωπέως, -έως, ὁ: Sinopean, of Sinope, 1

συν-δια-πράττω: to negotiate with; help in
accomplishing or transacting, 1

Τραπεζούντιος, -α, -ον: Trapezuntian, 1

Τραπεζοῦς, ὁ: Trapezus (city), 1

τριάκοντα: thirty, 4

1 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.

πορεύομαι; translate in the active

σταθμούς...παρασάγγας: for...; acc. of
extent

2 ἦλθον: aor. ἔρχομαι

3 οἰκουμένην: inhabited

ἀποικίαν: in apposition to πόλιν

4 ἔμειναν: aor. μένω

ἡμέρας: acc. of duration

ἀμφί: in approximation

5 κα(ί) (ἐ)ντεῦθεν

6 ἐλήζοντο: impf. mid. ληίζομαι

τῷ στρατοπέδῳ: for...; dat. of interest

7 ἐδέξαντο: welcomed

8 ξένια: as...

ἔδοσαν: aor. δίδωμι

συνδιεπράττοντο (τοῖς Ἑλλησιν): they
helped in negotiating (with the Greeks)...

ὑπὲρ: on behalf of...;

9 πλησίον: nearby; '(living) nearby' adv.

τῶν...οἰκούντων: in the attributive
position modifying Κόλχων

οικούντων, καὶ ξένια καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες. 25. μετὰ 10
 δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἣν ἠΰξαντο παρεσκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ'
 αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθύσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτήρι καὶ τῷ
 Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ᾧ ἠΰξαντο.
 ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ ἐσκή-
 νουν. εἶλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς 15
 ὢν οἴκοθεν, παῖδα ἄκων κατακανὼν ξυήλη πατάξας, δρόμου
 τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ ἀγῶνος προστατῆσαι. 26. ἐπειδὴ δὲ
 ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ δέρματα παρέδωσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ

ἀγών, ὁ: contest, competition, 2
 αἰρέω: seize, take; *mid.* choose, 3
 ἄκων (ἄ-έκων), ἄκουσα, ἄκων: unwilling, 1
 ἀπο-θύω: to offer up (in sacrifice), 1
 γυμνικός, -ή, -όν: athletic, gymnastic, 1
 δέρμα, -ατος, τό: the skin, hide, 2
 Δρακόντιος, ὁ: Dracontius, 2
 δρόμος, ὁ: run, running, flight; race course, 5
 ἔνθα-περ: the very place where, there where 1
 ἐπι-μέλ(ε)ομαι: to care for, look after (gen) 3
 εὔχομαι: to pray, offer prayers, vow, 5
 Ζεὺς, ὁ: Zeus, 1
 ἡγεμόσυνα, τό: offerings for safe conduct, 1
 Ἡρακλῆς, ὁ: Heracles, 1
 θεός, ὁ: a god, divinity, 3

- 10 **οικούντων**: pple modifies Κόλχων
ξένια: *as...*
παρ(ᾧ): *from...*; gen. of source
ἦλθον: aor. ἔρχομαι
 11 **ἣν ἠΰξαντο**: *which...*;
ἦλθον: i.e. through gifts
 12 **αὐτοῖς**: *for...*; dat. of interest
ἀποθύσαι: *to...*; aor. inf. of purpose
τῷ Διὶ: dat. sg. Ζεὺς
 13 **ἡγεμόσυνα**: acc. obj. of inf.
τοῖς θεοῖς: dat. ind. obj. parallel to τῷ Διὶ
ᾧ: (*for the thing*) *which...*; '(in respect to the things) which,' missing antecedent is acc. of respect or simply acc. obj.
 15 **εἶλοντο**: aor. middle αἰρέω (ἐλ-)

θυσία, ἡ: an offering, sacrifice, 2
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 4
 κατα-καίνω: to kill, slay, 2
 ξένια, τά: gifts of friendship or hospitality, 2
 ξυήλη, ἡ: whittling knife (to make a javelin) 2
 οἶκα-θεν: from home, 1
 οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5
 παρα-δίδωμι: to hand over, give over, 4
 παρασκευάζω: to prepare, get ready, 4
 πατάσσω: to strike; beat, knock, 1
 προ-στατέω: be over, be in charge of (gen) 1
 σκηνέω: to encamp, bivouac, set up tents, 5
 Σπαρτιάτης, ὁ: Spartan, 1
 σωτήρ, ὁ: deliverer, preserver, 1

- ἔφυγε**: aor. φεύγω; i.e. he was banished and therefore 'was an exile'
 16 **ὢν**: (*while*)...; circumstantial pple εἰμί, παῖς is predicate
παῖδα ἄκων κατακανὼν ξυήλη πατάξας: *because of...*; or 'by...;' the two aor. pples are causal in sense and explain why the Dracontius was exiled
ξηλή: dat. of means
 17 **δρόμου ἐπιμεληθῆναι**: *both to...and to...*; inf. of purpose, aor. pass. dep. inf.; i.e. to mark out and construct the racetrack
προστατῆσαι: another inf. of purpose; aor. inf. + gen.
 18 **παρέδωσαν**: aor. παραδίδωμι

ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποιηκὼς εἴη. ὁ δὲ
 δείξας οὐπὲρ ἐστηκότες ἐτύγχανον ‘οὗτος ὁ λόφος,’ ἔφη, 20
 ‘κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἂν τις βούληται.’ ‘πῶς οὖν,’ ἔφασαν,
 ‘δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως;’ ὁ δ’ εἶπε·
 ‘μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ καταπεσών.’ 27. ἡγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες
 μὲν στάδιον τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλείστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρήτες
 πλείους ἢ ἐξήκοντα ἔθεον, πάλιν δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγ- 25

ἀγωνίζομαι: to contend, compete, fight, 3
 αἰχμ-άλωτος, -ον: taken by spear, captive, 4
 ἀν-ιάω: to grieve, distress, 1
 δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick; thicket (bush/woods), 5
 δείκνυμι: to show, indicate, point out, 4
 δόλιχος, ὁ: long race (a dolicium), 1
 δρόμος, ὁ: run, running, flight; race course, 5
 ἐξήκοντα: sixty, 2
 ἵσθημι: make stand, set up, stop, establish, 7
 κατα-πίπτω: to fall down, drop down, 1
 Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ: a Cretan, 3
 μᾶλλον: more, rather, 4

ὅπου: where, 5
 οὐ-περ: the very place where, 1
 παγ-κράτιον, τό: pancration, box-wrestling 1
 παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old, aged, ancient, 2
 πάλιν, ἡ: wrestling, 1
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, 3
 πυγμὴν, ἡ: boxing, 1
 πῶς: how? in what way?, 2
 σκληρός, -ά, -όν: hard, harsh, severe, 1
 τρέχω: to run, 3
 τυγχάνω: chance upon, get; meet; happen, 5

- 19 (αὐτὸν) ἡγεῖσθαι: (*him*) to lead the way;
 i.e. Dracontius
 ὅπου...πεποιηκὼς εἴη: *wherever...*;
 general relative clause in secondary seq.
 with periphrastic pf. act. opt. (pf. pple +
 pres. opt. εἰμί): translate as plpf.
 ὁ δὲ: *and he*
 20 οὐπὲρ: relative pronoun
 ἐστηκότες ἐτύγχανον: *happened to...*;
 τυγχάνω + complementary pple, here pf.
 pple of ἵσθημι, translate pple as an inf.
 ἔφη: Dracontius is subject, φημί
 21 κάλλιστος (ἐστίν)
 τρέχειν: explanatory (exegetical) inf.
 qualifying κάλλιστος
 ὅπου ἂν...βούληται: *wherever...*; general
 relative clause. in primary seq. with ἂν +
 subj

- ἔφασαν: participants and spectators, φημί
 22 δασεῖ: *overgrown (ground)*; dat. sg.
 εἶπε: aor. λέγω
 23 μᾶλλον τι: *somewhat more*; ‘more by
 some’ a comparative adv. and adverbial acc.
 (acc. of extent in degree)
 ὁ καταπεσών: *the one...*; aor. pple
 καταπίπτω
 24 στάδιον: *a stadium race*; lit. ‘a stade’
 (600 feet/~185 meters) but here an inner
 acc.: ‘make a stade-contest’
 τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλείστοι: in
 apposition to παῖδες
 24 δόλιχον: *a dolicium race*; equiv. to 12
 stades (7200 feet/~2.2 km)
 25 πλείο(ν)ες: nom. pl. comparative
 modifying Κρήτες

κράτιον †ἕτεροι†, καὶ καλὴ θέα ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέ- 1
 βησαν καὶ ἅτε θεωμένων τῶν ἐταίρων πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγί-
 γνετο. 28. ἔθειον δὲ καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει αὐτοὺς κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς
 ἐλάσαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀποστρέψαντας πάλιν πρὸς τὸν
 βωμὸν ἄγειν. καὶ κάτω μὲν οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκαλινδοῦντο· ἄνω 5
 δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρθιον μόλις βάδην ἐπορεύοντο οἱ
 ἵπποι· ἔνθα πολλὴ κραυγὴ καὶ γέλως καὶ παρακέλουςις
 ἐγίγνετο.

ἀπο-στρέφω: to turn back, turn away, 1

ἅτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 3

βάδην: step by step, gradually, 2

βωμός, ὁ: platform, stand; altar, 1

ἐλαύνω: to march, ride, drive, 2

ἐταῖρος, ὁ: comrade, companion, mate, 2

ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 4

θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 7

θέα, ἡ: sight, spectacle, 1

θεάομαι: to see, gaze at, watch, 2

ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 7

καλινδέομαι: to roll over, 1

κάτω: downwards, below, 4

κραυγὴ, ἡ: shouting, crying, screaming, 3

μόλις (μόγισ): with difficulty, hardly, 1

παρακέλουςις -εως ἡ: cheering, urging on, 1

πρανής, ἐς: headlong, head down, down hill 1

φιλο-νικία, ἡ: rivalry, 1

1 †ἕτεροι†: A obelus (†) indicates that the word or clause is plainly corrupt but the editor cannot see how to emend it. Omit in translation.

θέα: note the placement of the accent: θεά means 'spectacle,' while θέα means 'goddess'

κατέβησαν: entered into contest; aor. καταβαίνω, an idiom for participating in the games

2 ἅτε...ἐταίρων: inasmuch as...; 'since...' ἅτε + pple (here, a gen. absolute) expresses cause from the narrator's point of view

3 ἔδει: impf. δεῖ

αὐτοῦς...ἄγειν: that (the Greeks)...; ind. disc. with missing. acc. subj.; αὐτοῦς, i.e.

the horses, object of both ἐλάσαντας and ἄγειν

κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς: headlong downhill; 'down headlong'

4 ἐλάσαντας: aor. pple modifying the missing acc. subject of ἄγειν

5 βωμὸν: stand; marking the start of the race ἄγειν: bring, drive

κάτω μὲν...ἄνω δὲ: downhill...uphill...; as the horses race down to the sea and back ἐκαλινδοῦντο: i.e. fell down uncontrollably as they raced downhill

6 πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρθιον: against the exceedingly steep (hill)

7 ἔνθα: then

Greek Text

For Classroom Use

ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΕΩΣ Δ

[ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει ἐγένετο μέχρι τῆς μάχης, 1
καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ὡς βασιλεὺς καὶ
οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνες ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα παρα-
βάντος τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη
πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατε- 5
ματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 2. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο
ἐνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ
βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια
ὄρη ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὴ
τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν ὀρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. 3. ἤκουον γὰρ 10
τῶν ἀλισκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ
Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἦν μὲν βούλονται,
διαβήσονται, ἦν δὲ μὴ βούλονται, περιάσι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐ-
φράτου δὲ τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι,
καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον. 4. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν 15
ᾧδε ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι
πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ ἄκρα.]

5. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν καὶ ἐλείπετο
τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον, τηνικαῦτα
ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλλεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται ἅμα 20
τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 6. ἐνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείτο
τοῦ στρατεύματος λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας
πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξιν ὀπλίταις εἶπετο

οὐδένα ἔχων γυμνήτα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μή 1
 τις ἄνω πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐπίσποιτο. 7. καὶ ἐπὶ
 μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρὶν τινὰς αἰσθῆσθαι
 τῶν πολεμίων· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγείτο· ἐφείπετο δὲ αἰεὶ τὸ
 ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς τὰς κώμας τὰς ἐν τοῖς 5
 ἄγκεσί τε καὶ μυχοῖς τῶν ὀρέων. 8. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι
 ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον
 ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ
 καὶ χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις κατεσκευασμένοι αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν 9
 οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον,
 ὑποφειδόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διέναι 10
 αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ περ βασιλεῖ πολέμιοι
 ἦσαν· 9. τὰ μέντοι ἐπιτήδεια ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυχῆται ἐλάμβανεν·
 ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε καλούντων ὑπήκουον
 οὔτε ἄλλο φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποιοῦν. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν 15
 Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη
 σκοταῖοι (διὰ γὰρ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν
 ἢ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο καὶ κατάβασις), τότε δὴ συλλε-
 γέντες τινὲς τῶν Καρδούχων τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπετίθεντο,
 καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινὰς καὶ λίθοις καὶ τοξεύμασι κατέτρωσαν, 20
 ὀλίγοι ὄντες· ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλλη-
 νικόν. 11. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν
 διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν
 νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ἡλίσθησαν· οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι
 πυρὰ πολλὰ ἔκαιον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ συνεώρων 25
 ἀλλήλους. 12. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθούσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
 καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν τε ὑποζυγίων τὰ

ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι, καταλιπόντας 1
 τᾶλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ
 στρατιᾷ πάντα ἀφεῖναι. 13. σχολαίαν γὰρ ἐποιοῦν τὴν πορείαν
 πολλὰ ὄντα τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ
 τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει 5
 πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων.
 δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.

14. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποστήσαντες ἐν τῷ
 στενῷ οἱ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὐρίσκοιεν τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφει- 9
 μένον, ἀφηροῦντο, οἱ δ' ἐπείθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλειπεν, οἷον 10
 ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμήσας ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην
 μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μὲν τι μαχόμενοι τὰ
 δὲ καὶ ἀναπανόμενοι. 15. εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίγνεται χειμῶν
 πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἱκανὰ τὰπι-
 τήδεια. καὶ ἠγείτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, ὠπισθοφυλάκει δὲ 15
 Ξενοφῶν. 16. καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ στενῶν
 ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιόντες ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφεν-
 δόνων· ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν
 ἀναχάζοντες σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγελλεν ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, 17. ὅτε οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπικέοιντο. 20
 ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἄλλοτε μὲν ὅτε παρεγγυῶτο ὑπέμενε,
 τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενε, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγύα ἔπεσθαι,
 ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι πράγμα τι εἴη· σχολὴ δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν
 παρελθόντι τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ὁμοία
 φυγῇ ἐγένετο τοῖς ὠπισθοφύλαξι. 18. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀποθνήσκει 25
 ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Λεώνυμος τοξευθεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος
 καὶ τῆς σπολάδος εἰς τὰς πλευράς, καὶ Βασίης Ἀρκὰς

διαμπερὲς τὴν κεφαλὴν. 19. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν, 1
 εὐθὺς ὥσπερ εἶχεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον
 ἡτιάτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἠναγκάζοντο φεύγοντες
 ἅμα μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε καὶ ἀγαθῶ ἄνδρε
 τέθνατον καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι ἐδυνάμεθα. 20. ἀποκρί- 5
 νεται ὁ Χειρίσοφος· 'βλέψον,' ἔφη, 'πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς
 ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· μία δ' αὕτη ὁδὸς ἦν ὁρᾶς ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ
 ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὁρᾶν ἔξεστί σοι ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἳ κατειλη-
 φότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. 21. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον καὶ 9
 διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως δυνάμην φθάσαι πρὶν 10
 κατειληφθαι τὴν ὑπερβολήν· οἳ δ' ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν οὐ
 φασιν εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν.' 22. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· 'ἀλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω
 δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρείχον, ἐνηδρεύ-
 σαμεν, ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε, καὶ ἀπεκτείναμέν
 τινες αὐτῶν, καὶ ζῶντας προθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου 15
 ἔνεκα ὅπως ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν χρησαίμεθα.

23. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἡλεγχον διαλαβόντες
 εἴ τινα εἰδείεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος
 οὐκ ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν
 ὠφέλιμον ἔλεγεν, ὁρῶντος τοῦ ἐτέρου κατεσφάγη. 24. ὁ δὲ 20
 λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναι, ὅτι
 αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· αὐτὸς
 δ' ἔφη ἡγήσασθαι δυνατὴν καὶ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν.
 25. ἐρωτώμενος δ' εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον χωρίον, ἔφη
 εἶναι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψοιτο, ἀδύνατον ἔσσεσθαι 25

παρελθεῖν. 26. ἐνταῦθα δ' ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγούς καὶ 1
 πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ παρόντα καὶ ἐρωτᾶν
 εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι καὶ
 ὑποστὰς ἐθελοντῆς πορεύεσθαι. 27. ὑφίσταται τῶν μὲν ὀπλιτῶν
 Ἀριστῶνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς [Ἀρκὰς] καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος 5
 [Ἀρκὰς], ἀντιστασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος
 [Ἀρκὰς καὶ οὗτος] ἔφη ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν
 ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος· 'ἐγὼ γάρ,' ἔφη,
 'οἶδα ὅτι ἔψονται πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου.' 28. ἐκ 9
 τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἴ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων ἐθέλοι 10
 συμπορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται Ἀριστεάς Χίος, ὃς πολλαχοῦ
 πολλοῦ ἄξιος τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο.

1. καὶ ἦν μὲν δείλη, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας
 πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῆσαντες παραδιδόασιν αὐτοῖς,
 καὶ συντίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἦν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ 15
 χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν·
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἵεναι ἐπὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν
 ἔκβασιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβοηθήσειν ἐκβαίνοντες ὡς ἂν δύνωνται
 τάχιστα. 2. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς
 δισχίλιοι· καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων 20
 τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἡγείτο πρὸς τὴν φανεράν ἔκβασιν, ὅπως
 ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὡς
 μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ περιμόντες. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ
 ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦν ἔδει διαβάντας πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον ἐκβαίνειν,
 τηνικαῦτα ἐκύλινδον οἱ βάρβαροι ὀλοιτρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ 25

μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πέτρας παίοντες 1
 διεσφενδονῶντο· καὶ παντάπασιν οὐδὲ πελάσαι οἶόν τ' ἦν τῇ
 εἰσόδῳ. 4. ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ δύναιτο, ἄλλη
 ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ
 ὥοντο ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· 5
 ἐτύγχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακή-
 σαντες. οἱ μέντοι πολέμοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς
 νυκτὸς κυλίνδοντες τοὺς λίθους· τεκμαίρεσθαι δ' ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ.
 5. οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα κύκλῳ περιμόντες καταλαμβάνουσι 9
 τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πῦρ καθημένους· καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατα- 10
 καίνοντες τοὺς δὲ καταδιώξαντες αὐτοὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ
 ἄκρον κατέχοντες. 6. οἱ δ' οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν ὑπὲρ
 αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ στενὴ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ ἐκάθηντο οἱ
 φύλακες. ἔφοδος μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἦν
 οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ ἐκάθηντο. 7. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθα 15
 διήγαγον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ὑπέφαιεν, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συντε-
 ταγμένοι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστ'
 ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς προσελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, ἥ τε
 σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώ-
 πους· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες 20
 ὀλίγοι ἀπέθνησκον· εὖζωνοι γὰρ ἦσαν. 8. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρί-
 σοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος εὐθὺς ἔεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν
 φανεράν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς
 ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύ-
 ναντο ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. 9. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι 25
 συνέμειξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ

ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἐπορεύετο ἥπερ οἱ 1
 τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐοδατάτη γὰρ ἦν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις·
 τοὺς δὲ ἡμίσεις ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἔταξε. 10. πορευόμενοι
 δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατελιγμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν
 πολεμίων, οὓς ἢ ἀποκόψαι ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεξεῦχθαι ἀπὸ 5
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἥπερ
 οἱ ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια οὐκ ἦν ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη ἐκβῆναι.
 11. ἔνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις προσβάλλουσι πρὸς
 τὸν λόφον ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες 9
 ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλονται φεύγειν. 12. καὶ τέως 10
 μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπη ἐδύναντο ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι
 ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ προσίεντο, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ
 λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν τε παρεληλύθεσαν οἱ
 Ἕλληνες καὶ ἕτερον ὁρῶσιν ἔμπροσθεν λόφον κατεχόμενον
 ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὖθις ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι. 13. ἐννοήσας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν 15
 μή, εἰ ἔρημον καταλίποι τὸν ἡλωκότα λόφον, [καὶ] πάλιν
 λαβόντες οἱ πολέμοι ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις παριοῦσιν
 (ἐπὶ πολὺν δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια ἅτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ
 πορευόμενα), καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου λοχαγούς, Κηφισό-
 δωρον Κηφισοφῶντος Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου 20
 Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν Ἀργεῖον φυγάδα, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν
 τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ
 τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον αἰροῦσιν. 14. ἔτι δ' αὐτοῖς τρίτος μαστὸς
 λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ κατα-
 ληφθείσης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐβελοντῶν. 15. ἐπεὶ δ' 25
 ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀμαχητὶ
 τὸν μαστόν, ὥστε θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπώπτειον

δείσαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῦντο ἀπολιπεῖν. 1
 οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου καθορῶντες τὰ ὀπισθεν γιγνόμενα
 πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἐχώρουν. 16. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν
 σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους
 ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμείξαιαν, 5
 καὶ προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα
 εἶπε. 17. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος
 πεφευγὼς καὶ λέγει ὥς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου καὶ
 ὅτι τεθνᾶσι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι
 μὴ ἀλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας 10
 ἀφίκοντο. 18. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἦκον ἐπ'
 ἀντίπορον λόφον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς
 δι' ἑρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπῆτει. 19. οἱ δὲ
 ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς οἰκίας. συνωμολόγει
 ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα παρήει, 15
 οἱ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου
 συνερρήσαν· †ἐνταῦθα ἴσταντο οἱ πολέμοι†. 20. καὶ ἐπεὶ
 ἦρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους
 ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειντο, ἴεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμοι πολλῷ πλήθει
 καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ 20
 ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρους· καὶ ἐνὸς
 μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστὴς
 ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπεν· 21. Εὐρύλοχος δὲ Λουσιεὺς [Ἀρκὰς]
 προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ ὀπλίτης, καὶ πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος
 ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπῆλθον. 25
 22. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν
 αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐπιτηδείοις δαιμιλέσι·

καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν λάκκοις κονιατοῖς εἶχον. 1
 23. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε λαβόντες
 τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδωκαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν
 τοῖς ἀποθανούσιν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν
 ἀγαθοῖς. 24. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο· μαχό- 5
 μενοι δ' οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ὅπη εἴη στενὸν χωρίον προκατα-
 λαμβάνοντες ἐκώλυνον τὰς παρόδους. 25. ὁπότε μὲν οὖν τοὺς
 πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθεν ἐκβαίνων πρὸς τὰ ὄρη
 ἔλκε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς πρώτοις ἀνωτέρω πειρώ-
 μενος γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυνόντων, 26. ὁπότε δὲ τοῖς ὀπισθεν 10
 ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων καὶ πειρώμενος ἀνωτέρω
 γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυνόντων ἔλκε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου
 τοῖς ὀπισθεν· καὶ αἰεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς
 ἀλλήλων ἐπεμέλοντο. 27. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁπότε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβάσι
 πολλὰ πράγματα παρέειχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν· 15
 ἐλαφροὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥστε καὶ ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν·
 οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. 28. ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ
 τοξόται ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς τριπήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύ-
 ματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἰλκον δὲ τὰς νευρὰς ὁπότε τοξεύοιεν
 πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ προσβαίνοντες. 20
 τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν
 θωράκων. ἐχρῶντο δὲ αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν,
 ἀκοντίους ἐναγκυλῶντες. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες
 χρησιμώτατοι ἐγένοντο. ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

1. ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν ἠγλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις 25
 ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν, εὖρος ὡς
 δίπλεθρον, ὃς ὀρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν Καρδούχων

χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἀνέπνευσαν ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες 1
 πεδίον· ἀπείχε δὲ τῶν ὀρέων ὁ ποταμὸς ἐξ ἧ ἑπτὰ στάδια
 τῶν Καρδούχων. 2. τότε μὲν οὖν ἠγλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως καὶ
 τὰπιτήδεια ἔχοντες καὶ πολλὰ τῶν παρεληλυθότων πόνων
 μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ 5
 τῶν Καρδούχων πάσας μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον
 κακὰ ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους.
 ὥς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων ἡδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.

3. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὀρώσιν ἱππέας που πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 ἐξωπλισμένους ὥς κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, πεζοὺς δ' ἐπὶ ταῖς 10
 ὄχθαις παρατεταγμένους ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων ὥς κωλύσοντας
 εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν ἐκβαίνειν. 4. ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Ὀρόντα καὶ
 Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι μισθοφόροι.
 ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι εἶναι·
 ὅπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. 5. αἱ δὲ ὄχθαι αὐται 15
 ἐφ' ὧν παρατεταγμένοι οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπείχον· ὁδὸς δὲ μία ὀρωμένη ἦν ἄγουσα
 ἄνω ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ
 Ἕλληνες. 6. ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμένοις τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν
 ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τραχὺς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλοις λίθοις καὶ 20
 ὀλισθηροῖς, καὶ οὗτ' ἐν τῷ ὕδατι τὰ ὅπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ
 μὴ, ἥρπαζεν ὁ ποταμός· ἐπὶ τε τῆς κεφαλῆς τὰ ὅπλα εἴ τις
 φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίγνοντο πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τὰλλα βέλη,
 ἀνεχώρησαν καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν.
 7. ἐνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους ἐώρων 25
 τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις.
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὀρώσι μὲν τοῦ
 ποταμοῦ τὴν δυσπορίαν, ὀρώσι δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν κωλύ-

σοντας, ὁρώσι δὲ τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν ἐπικεισομένους τοὺς 1
 Καρδούχους ὅπισθεν. 8. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα
 ἔμειναν ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὄναρ εἶδεν·
 ἔδοξεν ἐν πέδαις δεδέσθαι, αὐται δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτόματα περιρ-
 ρῆναι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅποσον ἐβούλετο. ἐπεὶ 5
 δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι
 ἐλπίδας ἔχει καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ διηγείται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ.
 9. ὁ δὲ ἤδeto τε καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέφαιναν ἐθύοντο πάντες
 παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί· καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ
 πρώτου. καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ 10
 λοχαγοὶ παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. 10. καὶ ἀρι-
 στῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο νεανίσκω· ἥδεσαν
 γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη αὐτῷ καὶ ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι
 προσελθεῖν καὶ, εἰ καθεύδοι, ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τίς τι
 ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. 11. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχά- 15
 νοιεν φρύγανα συλλέγοντες ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κᾶπειτα κατίδοιεν
 ἐν τῷ πέραν ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπ' αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν
 γέροντά τε καὶ γυναιῖκα καὶ παιδίσκας ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱμα-
 τίων κατατιθεμένους ἐν πέτρᾳ ἀνθρώδει. 12. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφίσι
 δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διαβῆναι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τοῖς πολεμίοις 20
 ἵππεῦσι προσβατὸν εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκδύντες δ' ἔφασαν
 ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσόμενοι διαβαίνειν·
 πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα·
 καὶ διαβάντες, λαβόντες τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἤκειν. 13. εὐθὺς οὖν
 Ξενοφῶν αὐτός τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐγχεῖν ἐκέ- 25
 λευε καὶ εὔχεσθαι τοῖς φήνασι θεοῖς τά τε ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν
 πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι. σπείσας δ' εὐθὺς
 ἦγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται

ταῦτά. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος σπονδὰς ἐποίει. 14. σπεί- 1
 σαντες δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον συσκευάζεσθαι,
 αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐβουλευόντο ὅπως
 ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαῖεν καὶ τοὺς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶεν καὶ
 ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. 15. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς 5
 Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγείσθαι καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ
 τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι,
 τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων διαβαίνειν.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν, ἐπορεύοντο. 16. ἡγοῦντο δ' οἱ νεα-
 νίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ 10
 τὴν διάβασιν ὡς τέτταρες στάδιοι. 17. πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν
 ἀντιπαρήσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἱππέων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ
 τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα,
 καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς 15
 ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε, καὶ
 τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν
 ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ οἱ μὲν μάντεις
 ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν. 18. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐτόξενον καὶ
 ἐσφενδόνων· ἀλλ' οὐπω ἐξικνούντο. 19. ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ 20
 σφάγια, ἐπαιάνιζον πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον,
 συνωλόλυζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν
 ἐταῖραι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. 20. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε
 καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων
 λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν
 πόρον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, 25
 προσποιούμενος ταύτῃ διαβὰς ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς παρὰ τὸν
 ποταμόν ἱππέας. 21. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὀρώντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ
 Χειρίσοφον εὐπετώς τὸ ὕδωρ περῶντας, ὀρώντες δὲ τοὺς
 ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ

ἀποληφθείησαν φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὥς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ 1
 ἄνω ἔκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, ἔτεινον ἄνω
 πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 22. Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἱππέων καὶ
 Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον
 ἐπεὶ ἐώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας, εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ στρα- 5
 τιῶται ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ
 ὄρος. 23. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ διέβη, τοὺς ἱππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν,
 εὐθὺς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
 ἐξέβαινεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὁρῶντες μὲν
 τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἱππέας φεύγοντας, ὁρῶντες δ' ὀπλίτας σφίσιν 10
 ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα. 24. Ξενοφῶν
 δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἐώρα καλῶς γιγνόμενα, ἀπεχώρει τὴν
 ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρ-
 δοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον καταβαίνοντες ὥς
 ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις. 25. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω 15
 κατεῖχε, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιώξαι ἔλαβε
 τῶν σκευοφόρων τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἐσθῆτά
 τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπώματα. 26. καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέβαινε, Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς
 Καρδούχους ἀντία τὰ ὄπλα ἔθετο, καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς 20
 λοχαγοῖς κατ' ἐνωμοτίας ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ
 λόχον, παρ' ἀσπίδα παραγαγόντας τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ φά-
 λαγγοις· καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους πρὸς
 τῶν Καρδούχων ἵεναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ
 ποταμοῦ. 27. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὥς ἐώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας 25
 τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους καὶ ὀλίγους ἤδη φαινομένους, θάττον
 δὴ ἐπῆσαν ὠδὰς τινας ἄδοντες. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ

τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, πέμπει παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς 1
 πελταστὰς καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν
 ὃ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ. 28. ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας Ξενοφῶν
 πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει αὐτοῦ μέναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ
 διαβάντας· ὅταν δ' ἄρξωνται αὐτοὶ διαβαίνειν, ἐναντίους 5
 ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν σφῶν ἐμβαίνειν ὡς διαβησομένους, διηγκυλω-
 μένους τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ ἐπιβεβλημένους τοὺς τοξότας·
 μὴ πρόσω δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ προβαίνειν. 29. τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἐαυτῷ
 παρήγγειλεν, ἐπειδὰν σφενδὸνῃ ἐξικνηται καὶ ἀσπίς ψοφῇ,
 παιανίσαντας θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπειδὰν δ' ἀναστρέ- 10
 ψωσιν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημήνη
 τὸ πολεμικόν, ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ ἡγεῖσθαι μὲν τοὺς
 οὐραγούς, θεῖν δὲ πάντας καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι τάχιστα ἢ
 ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν, ὡς μὴ ἐμποδίζεω ἀλλήλους· ὅτι 15
 οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν γένηται.
 30. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὁρῶντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς (πολλοὶ
 γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων ὥχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι οἱ μὲν
 ὑποζυγίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, οἱ δ' ἑταιρῶν), ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέ-
 κειντο θρασέως καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. 31. οἱ
 δὲ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὥρμησαν δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ 20
 δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὠπλισμένοι ὡς μὲν ἐν τοῖς
 ὅρεσιν ἱκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ
 τὸ εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἱκανῶς. 32. ἐν τούτῳ σημαίνει ὁ
 σαλπικτῆς· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ἔφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θᾶπτον,
 οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τάναντία στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ 25
 ὅτι τάχιστα. 33. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μὲν τινες αἰσθόμενοι
 πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τοξεύοντες ὀλίγους
 ἔτρωσαν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ πέραν ὄντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔτι

φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες. 34. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες ἀνδριζόμενοι 1
καὶ προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ προϊόντες ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενο-
φῶντος διέβησαν πάλιν· καὶ ἐτρώθησάν τινες καὶ τούτων.

1. ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας 5
ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίον ἅπαν καὶ λείους γη-
λόφους οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας· οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς
τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρ-
δούχους. 2. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο κώμην μεγάλη τε ἦν καὶ
βασιλείον εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς πλείσταις οἰκίαις
τύρσεις ἐπῆσαν· 3. ἐπιτήδεια δ' ἦν δαψιλῇ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπο- 10
ρεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα μέχρι ὑπερῆλθον
τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν
ποταμόν. οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ· κῶμαι δὲ
πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμόν ἦσαν. 4. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία 15
ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς ἐσπέραν. ὕπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς Τιρίβαζος,
ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γενόμενος, καὶ ὁπότε παρείη, οὐδεὶς
ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαλλεν. 5. οὗτος προσ-
ῆλασεν ἱππέας ἔχων, καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν ὅτι βού-
λοιο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν 20
ἀκούσαι· καὶ προσελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἡρώτων τί θέλει.
6. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς
Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς οἰκίας λαμβάνειν
τε τὰπιτήδεια ὅσων δέοιντο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις. 25

7. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς διὰ πεδίου
παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα· καὶ Τιρίβαζος παρηκολούθει ἔχων
τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἀπέχων ὥς δέκα σταδίου· καὶ ἀφίκοντο
εἰς βασιλεία καὶ κώμας περίξ πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτη-
δείων μεστάς. 8. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς 30

νυκτὸς χιῶν πολλή· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε διασκηῆσαι τὰς τάξεις 1
 καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς κώμας· οὐ γὰρ ἐώρων πολέ-
 μιον οὐδένα καὶ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
 χιόνος. 9. ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ,
 ἱερέα, σῖτον, οἶνους παλαιοὺς εὐώδεις, ἀσταφίδας, ὄσπρια 5
 παντοδαπά. τῶν δὲ ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρα-
 τοπέδου ἔλεγον ὅτι κατῖδοιεν νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντα.
 10. ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν,
 ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον·
 καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει διαιθριάζειν. 11. νυκτερευόντων δ' αὐτῶν 10
 ἐνταῦθα ἐπιπίπτει χιῶν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ
 ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια
 συνεπόδισεν ἡ χιῶν· καὶ πολλὸς ὄκνος ἦν ἀνίστασθαι· κατα-
 κειμένων γὰρ ἀλεεινὸν ἦν ἡ χιῶν ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα ὅτῳ μὴ
 παραρρυεῖ. 12. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς ἀναστὰς 15
 σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἐκείνου ἀφελό-
 μενος ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ
 ἔκαιον καὶ ἐχρίοντο· 13. πολὺ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα ἠύρίσκετο χρῖμα, ὧ
 ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου, σύειον καὶ σησάμινον καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον
 ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν καὶ τερμίνθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων 20
 καὶ μύρον ἠύρίσκετο.

14. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνητέον εἶναι [τὰς κώμας]
 εἰς στέγας. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ
 καὶ ἡδονῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ

ὅτε τὸ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν τὰς οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν ὑπὸ ἀταστα- 1
 λίας, δίκην ἐδίδοσαν κακῶς σκηνοῦντες. 15. ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν
 νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην Τημνίτην ἄνδρας δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα
 ἔφασαν οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ
 ἐδόκει καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη ἀληθεῦσαι τοιαῦτα, τὰ ὄντα τε 5
 ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. 16. πορευθεὶς δὲ τὰ μὲν
 πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα δὲ συλλαβὼν ἦκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα
 τόξον Περσικὸν καὶ φαιέτραν καὶ σάγαριν οἶαν περ καὶ <αἱ>
 Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. 17. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ποδαπὸς εἶη, Πέρσης
 μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατο- 10
 πέδου, ὅπως ἐπιτήδεια λάβοι. οἱ δὲ ἡρώτων αὐτὸν τὸ
 στράτευμα ὁπόσον τε εἶη καὶ ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. 18. ὁ δὲ
 εἶπεν ὅτι Τιριβάζος εἶη ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ
 μισθοφόρους Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν
 ἔφη ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς ἥπερ 15
 μοναχῇ εἶη πορεία, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιθησόμενον τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν.
 19. ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε τὸ στράτευμα συν-
 αγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας καταλιπόντες καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ
 τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες
 ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἄνθρωπον. 20. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ 20
 ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προϊόντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον
 οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ
 στρατόπεδον. 21. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον οὐχ
 ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὅμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν
 βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τιρι- 25
 βάζου ἐάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλίνει ἀργυρόποδες καὶ ἐκπώματα
 καὶ οἱ ἀρτοκόποι καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόοι φάσκοντες εἶναι. 22. ἐπειδὴ

δὲ ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς 1
ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μή τις ἐπίθεις
γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι
τῇ σάλπιγγι ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ στρα-
τόπεδον. 5

1. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἐδόκει πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπῃ δύναιτο
τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ συλλεγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν καὶ κατα-
λαβεῖν τὰ στενά. συσκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ
χιόνος πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν
ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τιρίβαζος 10
κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. 2. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς
ἐρήμους τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην
ποταμόν, καὶ διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν.
3. ἐλέγοντο δ' οὐδὲ πηγὰι πρόσω εἶναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο
διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας 15
†πεντεκαίδεκα†. ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος
βορρᾶς ἐναντίος ἔπνει παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα καὶ
πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 4. ἔνθα δὴ τῶν μάντεών τις εἶπε
σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιάζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ
περιφανῶς ἔδοξεν λῆξαι τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ 20
τῆς χιόνος τὸ βάθος ὀργυιά· ὥστε καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ
τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ ἀπώλετο καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς
τριάκοντα. 5. διεγένοντο δὲ τὴν νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες· ξύλα δ'
ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ ὁψέ προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ
εἶχον. οἱ οὖν πάλαι ἤκοντες καὶ τὸ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσ- 25

ἴεσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς 1
 πυρούς ἢ ἄλλο [τι] εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. 6. ἔνθα δὴ μετεδί-
 δοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν εἶχον ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο,
 διατηκομένης τῆς χιόνος βόθροι ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἕστε ἐπὶ
 τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος. 5
 7. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ὅλην ἐπορεύοντο διὰ
 χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλιμιάσαν. Ξενοφῶν δ'
 ὀπισθοφυλακῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀν-
 θρώπων ἡγνόει ὅ τι τὸ πάθος εἴη. 8. ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ
 τῶν ἐμπείρων ὅτι σαφῶς βουλιμῶσι κἄν τι φάγωσιν ἀνα- 10
 στήσονται, περιῶν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού τι ὀρώη βρωτόν,
 διεδίδου καὶ διέπεμπε διδόντας τοὺς δυναμένους περιτρέχειν
 τοῖς βουλιμῶσιν. 9. ἐπειδὴ δέ τι ἐμφάγοιεν, ἀνίσταντο καὶ
 ἐπορεύοντο. πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας 15
 πρὸς κώμην ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ ὑδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης
 πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας καταλαμβάνει ἔμπροσθεν
 τοῦ ἐρύματος. 10. αὐταὶ ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. ὁ δ' ἐρμη-
 νεὺς εἶπε Περσιστί ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν
 σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἴη, ἀλλ'
 ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ ὀψὲ ἦν, πρὸς τὸν 20
 κώμαρχον συνεισέρχονται εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις.
 11. Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος
 ἐνταῦθα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ
 μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι καὶ
 ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες ἀπώλοντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 25
 12. ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινὲς καὶ τὰ μὴ
 δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἥρπαζον καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο
 περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἳ τε διεφθαρ-

μένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἳ τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους 1
 τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσεσηπότες. 13. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν
 ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ
 τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ 5
 μηδέποτε ἡσυχίαν ἔχει καὶ εἰς τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο. 14. ὅσοι δὲ
 ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ ἱμάντες
 καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν, ἐπειδὴ
 ἐπέλιπε τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα, καρβάτιναι πεποιημένοι ἐκ
 τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν. 15. διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελεί-
 ποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον 10
 διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα, εἵκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ
 ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην τινὰ ἣ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπη.
 ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι.
 16. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας ὡς ἦσθετο, ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν
 πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται 15
 πολλοὶ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι, καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαιεν.
 οἱ δὲ σφάττειν ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι.
 17. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους
 φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ ἐπίοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ ἦν
 μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσῆσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ ἀμφὶ ὧν 20
 εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. 18. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, ἅτε ὑγιαί-
 νοντες, ἔξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ
 κάμνοντες ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας
 πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἔκρουσαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι δέισαντες ἦκαν
 ἐαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐ- 25
 δαμοῦ ἐφθέγγατο. 19. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ
 εἰπόντες τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσιν ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἤξουσί τινες
 ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα στάδια διελθεῖν ἐν-

τυγχάνουσιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαυομένοις ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος τοῖς 1
 στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία
 καθειστήκει· καὶ ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ
 ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. 20. ὁ δὲ παριὼν καὶ παραπέμπων
 τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί 5
 εἴη τὸ κωλύον. οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι ὅλον οὕτως ἀνα-
 παύοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. 21. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα
 ἠϋλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι, φυλακὰς οἷας
 ἐδύναντο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν, ὁ μὲν
 Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας τοὺς νεωτάτους 10
 ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προΐεναι. 22. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ
 Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκευομένους πῶς
 ἔχοιεν οἱ τελευταῖοι. οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν
 ἀσθενοῦντας τούτοις παρέδωκαν κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπε- 15
 δον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διεληλυ-
 θέναι ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἠϋλίζετο. 23. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κώμας ἀσφαλὲς
 εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν,
 οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ὥς ἐώρων κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι
 τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες. 24. ἔνθα δὲ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχα- 20
 γὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφίεναι ἑαυτόν· καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους,
 θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην ἣν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει
 πάντας ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν κωμάρχον, καὶ πῶλους
 εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους ἑπτακαίδεκα, καὶ τὴν
 θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην· ὁ δ' 25
 ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ᾤχετο θηράσων καὶ οὐχ ἥλω ἐν τῇ
 κώμῃ. 25. αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα ὥσπερ

φρέατος, κάτω δ' εὐρείαι· αἱ δὲ εἰσοδοὶ τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις 1
 ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ
 ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἰες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα
 τούτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. 26. ἦσαν
 δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν 5
 κρατήρσιν. ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ
 κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο, οἱ μὲν μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα
 οὐκ ἔχοντες· 27. τούτους ἔδει ὁπότε τις διψῶν λαβόντα εἰς τὸ
 στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνν ἄκρατος ἦν, εἰ μὴ τις ὕδωρ ἐπι-
 χέοι· καὶ πάνν ἡδὺν συμμαθόντι τὸ πῶμα ἦν. 28. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν 10
 τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς κώμης ταύτης σύνδειπνον ἐποίησατο καὶ
 θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων ὅτι οὔτε τῶν τέκνων στερή-
 σοιτο τήν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῶν ἐπιτηδείων
 ἀπίαςιν, ἦν ἀγαθὸν τι τῷ στρατεύματι ἐξηγησάμενος φαί-
 νηται ἔστ' ἂν ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθναι γένωνται. 29. ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπισχνέτο, 15
 καὶ φιλοφρονούμενος οἶνον ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν κατορωρυγμένος.
 ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν
 ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται, ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες
 τὸν κώμαρχον καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. 30. τῇ
 δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κώμαρχον πρὸς Χειρί- 20
 σοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς
 ἐν ταῖς κώμας καὶ κατελάμβανε πανταχοῦ εὐωχουμένους καὶ
 εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ σὺδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν πρὶν παραθεῖναι αὐ-
 τοῖς ἄριστον· 31. οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν
 τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνια, ἐρίφεια, χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθια, 25
 σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις τοῖς δὲ κριθίνοις.
 32. ὁπότε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενός τῳ βούλοιτο προπιεῖν, εἵλκεν

ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα, ἔνθεν ἐπικύψαντα ἔδει ρόφουντα πίνειν 1
 ὥσπερ βοῦν. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἐδίδοσαν λαμβάνειν ὃ τι
 βούλοιο. ὁ δὲ ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο, ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν
 συγγενῶν ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν. 33. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον
 πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατελάμβανον κἀκείνους σκηνοῦντας ἐστε- 5
 φανωμένους τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ στεφάνοις, καὶ διακονοῦντας
 Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς· τοῖς παι-
 σὶν ἐδείκνυσαν ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὃ τι δέοι ποιεῖν. 34. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀλλή-
 λους ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὴ
 ἀνηρώτων τὸν κώμαρχον διὰ τοῦ Περσίζοντος ἐρμηνεύς τις 10
 εἶη ἡ χώρα. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν ἡρώτων
 τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ δασμός·
 τὴν δὲ πλησίον χώραν ἔφη εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν
 ἔφραζεν ἥ εἶη. 35. καὶ αὐτὸν τότε μὲν ὥχετο ἄγων ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκέτας, καὶ ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαιότερον 15
 δίδωσι τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῆσαι, ὅτι ἤκουεν
 αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι τοῦ Ἥλιου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· ἐκεκά-
 κωτο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν πῶλων λαμβάνει,
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν ἔδωκεν ἐκάστῳ
 πῶλον. 36. ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι μέiones μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, 20
 θυμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολὺ. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ κώμαρ-
 χος περὶ τοὺς πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων σακία
 περιελεῖν, ὅταν διὰ τῆς χιόνος ἄγωσιν· ἄνευ γὰρ τῶν σακίων
 κατεδύνοντο μέχρι τῆς γαστρού.

1. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν μὲν ἡγεμόνα παραδίδωσι 25
 Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δὲ οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχῳ, πλὴν
 τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος· τοῦτον δὲ Πλεισθένει Ἀμφι-
 πολίτῃ δίδωσι φυλάττειν, ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἡγήσοιτο, ἔχων

καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ εἰσεφόρησαν ὥς 1
 ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ ἀναζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. 2. ἡγείτο δ'
 αὐτοῖς ὁ κώμαρχος λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος· καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν
 τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη ὅτι οὐκ
 εἰς κώμας ἦγαγεν. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ 5
 τούτῳ. 3. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, ἔδῃσε δ' οὐ. ἐκ
 δὲ τούτου ἐκεῖνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδρὰς ὥχετο καταλιπὼν τὸν
 υἱόν. τοῦτό γε δὴ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διά-
 φορον ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο, ἢ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος κάκωσις καὶ
 ἀμέλεια. Πλεισθένης δὲ ἠράσθη τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ οἴκαδε 10
 κομίσας πιστοτάτῳ ἐχρήτο. 4. μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ
 σταθμοὺς ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν
 ποταμόν, εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. 5. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθ-
 μούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον ὑπερ-
 βολῇ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. 15
 6. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ,
 ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίου, ἵνα
 μὴ κατὰ κέρας ἄγων πλησιάσῃ τοῖς πολεμίοις· παρήγγειλε
 δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος
 γένοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. 7. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, 20
 συνεκάλεσε στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. 'οἱ
 μὲν πολέμοι, ὥς ὀράτε, κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους·
 ὥρα δὲ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως ὥς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. 8. ἐμοὶ
 μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι τοῖς στρα-
 τιώταις, ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε αὔριον δοκεῖ 25
 ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος.' 9. 'ἐμοὶ δέ γε,' ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, 'δοκεῖ,
 ἐπὰν τάχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν, ἐξοπλισαμένους ὥς κράτιστα

ἵεναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. εἰ γὰρ διατρίβομεν τὴν τήμερον 1
 ἡμέραν, οἳ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς ὀρώντες πολέμοι θαρραλεώτεροι
 ἔσονται καὶ ἄλλους εἰκὸς τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους προσ-
 γενέσθαι. 10. μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· 'ἐγὼ δ' οὕτω
 γιγνώσκω. εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρα- 5
 σκευάσασθαι, ὅπως ὥς κράτιστα μαχοῦμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα
 ὥς ῥᾶστα ὑπερβάλλειν, τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ σκεπτέον εἶναι, ὅπως
 ὥς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα λάβωμεν, ὥς ἐλάχιστα δὲ
 σώματα ἀνδρῶν ἀποβάλωμεν. 11. τὸ μὲν οὖν ὅρος ἐστὶ τὸ
 ὀρώμενον πλεόν ἢ ἐφ' ἐξήκοντα στάδια, ἄνδρες δ' οὐδαμοῦ 10
 φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς φανεροί εἰσιν ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν·
 πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττον τοῦ ἐρήμου ὅρους καὶ κλέψαι τι πειρᾶσθαι
 λαθόντας καὶ ἀρπάσαι φθάσαντας, εἰ δυναίμεθα, μᾶλλον ἢ
 πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἀνθρώπους παρεσκευασμένους μάχε-
 σθαι. 12. πολὺ γὰρ ῥᾶον ὄρθιον ἀμαχεῖ ἵεναι ἢ ὁμαλὲς ἔνθεν 15
 καὶ ἔνθεν πολεμίων ὄντων, καὶ νύκτωρ ἀμαχεῖ μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ
 πρὸ ποδῶν ὀρώη τις ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα
 τοῖς ποσὶν ἀμαχεῖ ἰοῦσιν εὐμενεστέρα ἢ ἡ ὁμαλὴ τὰς κεφαλὰς
 βαλλομένοις. 13. καὶ κλέψαι δ' οὐκ ἀδύνατόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι,
 ἐξὸν μὲν νυκτὸς ἵεναι, ὥς μὴ ὀρᾶσθαι, ἐξὸν δ' ἀπελθεῖν 20
 τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ αἰσθησιν παρέχειν. δοκοῦμεν δ' ἂν μοι
 ταύτῃ προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν ἐρημοτέρῳ ἢ τῷ ὄρει
 χρήσθαι· μένοιν γὰρ ἂν αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον ἄθρόοι οἱ πολέμοι.
 14. ἀτὰρ τί ἐγὼ περὶ κλοπῆς συμβάλλομαι; ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ 25
 Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὅσοι ἐστὲ τῶν ὁμοίων
 εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων κλέπτειν μελετᾶν, καὶ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι

ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα μὴ κωλύει νόμος. 15. ὅπως δὲ ὥς 1
 κράτιστα κλέπτητε καὶ πειρᾶσθε λανθάνειν, νόμιμον ἄρα
 ὑμῖν ἐστίν, ἐὰν ληφθῇτε κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. νῦν
 οὖν μάλα σοι καιρὸς ἐστίν ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ
 φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὥς μὴ 5
 πληγὰς λάβωμεν. 16. ‘ἀλλὰ μέντοι,’ ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ‘κἀγὼ
 ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δη-
 μόσια, καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ κινδύνου τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ
 τοὺς κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ ὑμῖν οἱ κράτιστοι
 ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦνται· ὥστε ὦρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παι- 10
 δείαν.’ 17. ‘ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν,’ ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ‘ἔτοιμός εἰμι τοὺς
 ὀπισθοφυλάκας ἔχων, ἐπειδὰν δειπνήσωμεν, ἵεναι καταλη-
 ψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· οἱ γὰρ γυμνήτες
 τῶν ἐπομένων ἡμῖν κλωπῶν ἔλαβόν τινας ἐνεδρεύσαντες·
 τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ ἄβατόν ἐστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ 15
 νέμεται αἰξί καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ
 ὄρους, βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ἔσται. 18. ἐλπίζω δὲ οὐδὲ τοὺς
 πολεμίους μενεῖν ἔτι, ἐπειδὰν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ
 τῶν ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν ἐθέλουσι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον
 ἡμῖν.’ 19. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· ‘καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἵεναι καὶ λιπεῖν 20
 τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν μὴ τινες
 ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ φαίνωνται.’ 20. ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστῶνυμος Μεθυ-
 δριεὺς ἔρχεται ὀπλίτας ἔχων καὶ Ἀριστεάς ὁ Χῖος γυμνήτας
 καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα ἐποίησαντο,
 ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα, πυρὰ καίειν πολλά. 21. ταῦτα συνθέ- 25
 μενοι ἡρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου προήγαγεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος

τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν ὥς δέκα σταδίους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, 1
ὅπως ὥς μάλιστα δοκοίη ταύτῃ προσάξειν.

22. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν καὶ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες
ῥχοντο, καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ
ἀνεπαύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, 5
ἐγρηγόρεσαν καὶ ἔκαιον πυρὰ πολλὰ διὰ νυκτός. 23. ἐπειδὴ δὲ
ἡμέρα ἐγένετο Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν
ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἐπήσαν.
24. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ
ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν δὲ 10
ὁμοῦ εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλοις, συμμειγνύασιν οἱ κατὰ
τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ διώκουσιν. 25. ἐν τούτῳ
δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
δρόμῳ ἔθεον πρὸς τοὺς παρατεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ
βάδην ταχὺ ἐφείπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις. 26. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οἱ 15
ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἄνω ἐώρων ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ
ἀπέθανον μὲν οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, γέρρα δὲ πάμπολλα ἐλήφθη·
ἃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποιοῦν.
27. ὥς δ' ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέ-
βησαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν 20
γεμούσας ἦλθον.

1. ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους σταθμοὺς πέντε
παρασάγγας τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλειπε· χωρία
γὰρ ῥκουν ἰσχυρὰ οἱ Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἅπαντα
εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι. 2. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον ὃ 25
πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ' οἰκίας, συνελθυότες δ' ἦσαν
αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη πολλά, Χειρί-

σοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς τοῦτο προσέβαλλεν εὐθύς ἦκων· ἐπεὶ δὲ 1
 δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις ἀπέκαμνεν, ἄλλη προσήει καὶ αὖθις ἄλλη·
 οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλ’ ἀπότομον ἦν κύκλω.
 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι καὶ πελτα-
 σταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· ‘εἰς καλὸν 5
 ἦκετε· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ
 ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον. 4. ἐνταῦθα δὴ κοινῇ ἐβου-
 λεύοντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφώντος ἐρωτῶντος τί τὸ κωλύον εἴη
 εἰσελθεῖν, εἶπεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος· ‘μία αὕτη πάροδος ἐστὶν ἣν
 ὀρᾶς· ὅταν δέ τις ταύτῃ πειράται παριέναι, κυλίνδουσι λίθους 10
 ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας· ὃς δ’ ἂν καταληφθῇ,
 οὕτω διατίθεται.’ ἅμα δ’ ἔδειξε συντετριμμένους ἀνθρώπους
 καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. 5. ‘ἦν δὲ τοὺς λίθους ἀναλώσωσιν,’
 ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ‘ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει παριέναι; οὐ γὰρ
 δὴ ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ὀρώμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους, 15
 καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὥπλισμένους. 6. τὸ δὲ χωρίον, ὥς καὶ
 σὺ ὀρᾶς, σχεδὸν τρία ἡμίπλεθρά ἐστὶν ὃ δεῖ βαλλομένους
 διελθεῖν· τούτου δὲ ὅσον πλέθρον δασὺ πίτυσι διαλειπούσαις
 μεγάλαις, ἀνθ’ ὧν ἐστηκότες ἄνδρες τί ἂν πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ
 τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδομένων; τὸ λοιπὸν 20
 οὖν γίνεταί ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον, ὃ δεῖ ὅταν λωφήσωσιν οἱ λίθοι
 παραδραμεῖν.’ 7. ‘ἀλλὰ εὐθύς,’ ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ‘ἐπειδὴν
 ἀρξώμεθα εἰς τὸ δασὺ προσιέναι, φέρονται οἱ λίθοι πολλοί.’
 ‘αὐτὸ ἂν,’ ἔφη, ‘τὸ δέον εἴη· θᾶπτον γὰρ ἀναλώσουσι τοὺς
 λίθους. ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ἔνθεν ἡμῖν μικρόν τι παραδραμεῖν 25
 ἔσται, ἣν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον, ἣν βουλώμεθα.’

8. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλ- 1
 λίμαχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία ἦν
 τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγῶν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι
 λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπῆλθον
 ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἐβδομήκοντα, οὐχ ἄθροοι ἀλλὰ 5
 καθ' ἓνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. 9. Ἀγασίας δὲ
 ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς καὶ οὗτοι τῶν
 ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν
 ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις
 ἐστάναι πλέον ἢ τὸν ἓνα λόχον. 10. ἔνθα δὲ Καλλίμαχος 10
 μηχανᾶται τι· προύτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν αὐτὸς
 δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνέχαζεν
 εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης δὲ τῆς προδρομῆς πλέον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι
 πετρῶν ἀνηλίσκοντο. 11. ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας ὡς ὀρᾷ τὸν Καλλί-
 μαχον ἃ ἐποίει τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ 15
 πρῶτος παραδράμῃ εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστώνυμον
 πλησίον ὄντα παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα,
 ἐταίρους ὄντας, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα χωρεῖ αὐτός, καὶ παρέρ-
 χεται πάντας. 12. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὀρᾷ αὐτὸν παριόντα,
 ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἵτους· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ αὐτοὺς 20
 Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λου-
 σιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς καὶ διηγωνί-
 ζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως ἐρίζοντες αἰροῦσι τὸ χωρίον.
 ὡς γὰρ ἅπαξ εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἄνωθεν ἠνέχθη.
 13. ἐνταῦθα δὲ δεινὸν ἦν θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι 25

τὰ παῖδιά εἰτα ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύ- 1
 τως. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδὼν τινα
 θέοντα ὡς ῥάβοντα ἑαυτὸν στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν ἐπιλαμ-
 βάνεται ὡς κωλύσων· 14. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπᾶται, καὶ ἀμφοτέροι
 ὄχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπέθανον. ἐντεῦθεν 5
 ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ ὄνοι
 πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

15. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς ἑπτὰ
 παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὧν διηλθον ἀλκιμώ-
 τατοι, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ θώρακας λινοὺς μέχρι 10
 τοῦ ἥτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πτερύγων σπάρτα πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα.

16. εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη καὶ παρὰ τὴν ζώνην μαχαίριον
 ὅσον ξυήλην Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ ἔσφαττον ὧν κρατεῖν δύναιτο,
 καὶ ἀποτεμόντες ἂν τὰς κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ
 ἦδον καὶ ἐχόρευον ὅποτε οἱ πολέμοι αὐτοὺς ὄψεσθαι ἔμελ- 15
 λον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων μίαν
 λόγχην ἔχον. 17. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ
 παρέλθοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἶποντο αἰεὶ μαχοῦμενοι. ὥκουν
 δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομι-
 σμένοι ἦσαν· ὥστε μηδὲν λαμβάνειν αὐτόθεν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, 20
 ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν ἃ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον.

18. ἐκ τούτων οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ Ἄρπασον ποταμόν,
 εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Σκυ-
 θηνῶν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου
 εἰς κώμας· ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. 25

19. ἐντεῦθεν διηλθον σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι

πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο 1
 Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης †τῆς χώρας† ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἑλλησιν
 ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι
 αὐτούς. 20. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν
 εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή, τεθνάναι 5
 ἐπηγγείλατο. καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλλεν εἰς τὴν
 ἑαυτοῦ πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο αἰθεῖν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν
 χώραν· ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ τῆς
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας. 21. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ
 πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ 10
 πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους καὶ κατείδον τὴν θάλατταν,
 κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. 22. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ
 ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾤκηθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολε-
 μίους· εἶποντο γὰρ ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης χώρας, καὶ
 αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτεινάν τέ τινας καὶ ἐζώγρησαν 15
 ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα ἔλαβον δασειῶν βοῶν ὠμο-
 βόεια ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. 23. ἐπειδὴ δὲ βοὴ πλείων τε ἐγίγνετο
 καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ
 βοῶντας καὶ πολλῷ μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἢ βοὴ ὅσῃ δὴ πλείους
 ἐγίγνοντο, 24. ἐδόκει δὴ μείζόν τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ 20
 ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἀναλαβὼν
 παρεβόηθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοῶντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 'θάλαττα θάλαττα' καὶ παρεγγυώντων. ἔνθα δὴ ἔθεον πάντες
 καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἡλαύνετο καὶ οἱ

ἵπποι. 25. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὴ 1
 περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς δα-
 κρύνοντες. καὶ ἐξαπίνης ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος οἱ στρα-
 τιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. 26. ἐνταῦθα 5
 ἀνετίθεσαν δερμάτων πλήθος ὠμοβοείων καὶ βακτηρίας καὶ
 τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτός τε κατέτεμνε τὰ
 γέρρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. 27. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον καὶ
 φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρεικοὺς δέκα·
 ἥτει δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ 10
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν. κώμην δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς οὗ σκηνήσουσι
 καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύσονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἑσπέρα
 ἐγένετο, ὥχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπιών.

1. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ Μακρώνων
 σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ 15
 ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς ὠρίζε τὴν τῶν Μακρώνων καὶ
 τὴν τῶν Σκυθηνῶν. 2. εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν χωρίον οἶον
 χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ἐνέ-
 βαλλεν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει διαβῆναι. ἦν δὲ οὗτος δασὺς
 δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὗ, πυκνοῖς δέ. ταῦτ' ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον 20
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα
 ἐξελθεῖν. 3. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ
 τριχίνους χιτῶνας κατ' ἀντιπέραν τῆς διαβάσεως παρατε-
 ταγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἀλλήλοις διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν
 ποταμὸν ἔρριπτον· ἐξικνούντο γὰρ οὐ οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον οὐδέν. 25

4. ἔνθα δὴ προσέρχεται Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελταστῶν ἀνὴρ

Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γιγνώσκοι τὴν 1
 φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. ‘καὶ οἶμαι,’ ἔφη, ‘ἐμὴν ταύτην πατρίδα
 εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει, ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς διαλεχθῆναι.’
 5. ‘ἀλλ’ οὐδὲν κωλύει,’ ἔφη, ‘ἀλλὰ διαλέγου καὶ μάθε πρῶτον 5
 τίνες εἰσὶν.’ οἱ δ’ εἶπον ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι ‘Μάκρωνες.’ ‘ἐρώτα
 τοίνυν,’ ἔφη, ‘αὐτοὺς τί ἀντιτετάχεται καὶ χρήζουσιν ἡμῖν
 πολέμιοι εἶναι.’ 6. οἱ δ’ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι ‘καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν
 ἡμετέραν χώραν ἔρχεσθε.’ λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 ὅτι ‘οὐ κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες
 ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλόμεθα 10
 ἀφικέσθαι.’ 7. ἡρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά.
 οἱ δ’ ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλιν. ἐντεῦθεν
 διδόασιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην τοῖς Ἑλλησιν,
 οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν· ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν
 πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ’ ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφότεροι. 15

8. μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συνεξέ-
 κοπτον τὴν τε ὁδὸν ὠδοποιοῦν ὥς διαβιβάσοντες ἐν μέσοις
 ἀναμεμιγμένοι τοῖς Ἑλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο
 παρεῖχον, καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ
 Κόλχων ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἑλληνας. 9. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος 20
 μέγα, προσβατὸν δέ· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι παρατε-
 ταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀντιπαρε-
 τάξαντο φάλαγγα, ὥς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς τὸ ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ
 ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλεύσασθαι συλλεγείσιν ὅπως ὥς
 κάλλιστα ἀγωνιοῦνται. 10. ἔλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοίη 25
 παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιῆσαι· ἡ μὲν γὰρ

φάλαγξ διασπασθήσεται εὐθύς· τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἄνοδον τῇ δὲ 1
 εὐοδον εὐρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ἀθυμίαν ποιήσει
 ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα ταύτην διεσπασμένην ὀρώσιν.
 11. ἔπειτα ἦν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν τεταγμένοι προσάγωμεν, περιτ-
 τεύσουσιν ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τοῖς περιττοῖς χρήσονται 5
 ὃ τι ἂν βούλωνται· ἐὰν δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγων τεταγμένοι ὦμεν,
 οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπεῖη ἡμῶν ἡ φάλαγξ ὑπὸ
 ἀθρόων καὶ βελῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δέ
 πη τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται. 12. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ
 ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους ποιησαμένους τοσοῦτον χωρίον κατα- 10
 σχεῖν διαλιπόντας τοῖς λόχοις ὅσον ἔξω τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους
 γενέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων· καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα τῆς
 τε τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω [οἱ ἔσχατοι λόχοι], καὶ
 ὀρθίους ἄγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσίασιν, ἥ τε
 ἂν εὐοδον ᾗ, ταύτῃ ἕκαστος ἄξει [ὁ λόχος]. 13. καὶ εἷς τε τὸ 15
 διαλείπον οὐ ράδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμίοις εἰσελθεῖν ἔνθεν
 καὶ ἔνθεν λόχων ὄντων, διακόψαι τε οὐ ράδιον ἔσται λόχον
 ὀρθιον προσιόντα. ἂν τέ τις πιέζῃται τῶν λόχων, ὁ πλησίον
 βοηθήσει. ἦν τε εἷς πη δυνηθῇ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον
 ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς μηκέτι μείνῃ τῶν πολεμίων.' 14. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, 20
 καὶ ἐποιοῦν ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ
 τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· ἄνδρες,
 οὐτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὀράτε μόνοι ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδῶν τὸ μὴ ἦδη
 εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι σπεύδομεν· τούτους, ἦν πως δυνάμεθα,
 καὶ ὠμοὺς δεῖ καταφαγεῖν.

15. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς λόχους

ὀρθίους ἐποιήσαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ 1
 τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν·
 τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ ἐποιήσαντο, τοὺς
 μὲν τοῦ εὐωνύμου ἕξω, τοὺς δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ
 μέσον, σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους. 16. ἐκ τούτου παρηγ- 5
 γύησαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι· εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανί-
 σαντες ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ
 οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς πελτασταὶ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἕξω
 γενόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο· 17. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὥς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντι-
 παραθέοντες οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον 10
 διεσπάσθησαν, καὶ πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ
 κενὸν ἐποίησαν. 18. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν πελτασταί, ὧν
 ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν, νομίσαντες φεύγειν ἀνακρα-
 γόντες ἔθεον· καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσι·
 συνεφείπετο δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν, ὧν ἦρχε 15
 Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος. 19. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι, ὥς ἤρξαντο θεῖν,
 οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλη ἐτράπετο. οἱ δὲ
 Ἕλληνες ἀναβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν πολλαῖς κώμαις
 καὶ τὰπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἐχούσαις. 20. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν
 ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι, καὶ τῶν 20
 κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν στρατιωτῶν πάντες ἄφρονές τε
 ἐγίγνοντο καὶ ἤμουν καὶ κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς
 οὐδεὶς ἐδύνατο ἵστασθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες
 σφόδρα μεθύουσιν ἐώκεσαν, οἱ δὲ πολὺ μαινομένοις, οἱ δὲ
 καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. 21. ἔκειντο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ τροπῆς 25
 γεγεννημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέθανε
 μὲν οὐδεὶς, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν πῶς ὥραν ἀνεφρόνουν· τρίτῃ
 δὲ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

22. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμούς παρασάγγας ἑπτὰ, 1
 καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα
 οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, Σινωπέων ἀποικίαν, ἐν
 τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἀμφὶ τὰς τριά-
 κοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων κώμασι· 23. κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώμενοι 5
 ἐλῆζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρέιχον τῷ στρατο-
 πέδῳ Τραπεζοῦντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἑλληνας καὶ
 ξένια ἔδοσαν βούς καὶ ἄλφιστα καὶ οἶνον. 24. συνδιεπράττοντο
 δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα
 οἰκούντων, καὶ ξένια καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες. 25. μετὰ 10
 δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἣν ἠϋξάντο παρεσκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ'
 αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτήρι καὶ τῷ
 Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ ἠϋξάντο.
 ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ ἐσκή-
 νουν. εἶλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς 15
 ὦν οἴκοθεν, παῖδα ἄκων κατακανὼν ξυήλη πατάξας, δρόμον
 τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ ἀγῶνος προστατῆσαι. 26. ἐπειδὴ δὲ
 ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ δέρματα παρέδωσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ
 ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποιηκὼς εἴη. ὁ δὲ
 δείξας οὐπὲρ ἐστηκότες ἐτύγχανον 'οὗτος ὁ λόφος,' ἔφη, 20
 'κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἄν τις βούληται.' 'πῶς οὖν,' ἔφασαν,
 'δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως;' ὁ δ' εἶπε·
 'μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ καταπεσών.' 27. ἡγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες
 μὲν στάδιον τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλείστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρήτες
 πλείους ἢ ἑξήκοντα ἔθεον, πάλιν δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγ- 25

κράτιον †ἕτεροι†, καὶ καλὴ θέα ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέ- 1
 βησαν καὶ ἅτε θεωμένων τῶν ἐταίρων πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγί-
 γνετο. 28. ἔθρον δὲ καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει αὐτοὺς κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς
 ἐλάσαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀποστρέψαντας πάλιν πρὸς τὸν
 βωμὸν ἄγειν. καὶ κάτω μὲν οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκαλινδοῦντο· ἄνω 5
 δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρθιον μόλις βάδην ἐπορεύοντο οἱ
 ἵπποι· ἔνθα πολλὴ κραυγὴ καὶ γέλως καὶ παρακέλευσις
 ἐγίγνετο.

Glossary

Declensions

ή κρήνη, τῆς κρήνης - spring		ὁ ἀγρός, τοῦ ἀγροῦ - field		ὁ παῖς, τοῦ παιδός - child	
Nom. ἡ κρήνη	αἱ κρήναι	ὁ ἀγρός	οἱ ἀγροί	ὁ παῖς	οἱ παῖδ-ες
Gen. τῆς κρήνης	τῶν κρηνῶν	τοῦ ἀγροῦ	τῶν ἀγρῶν	τοῦ παιδ-ός	τῶν παιδ-ων
Dat. τῇ κρήνῃ	ταῖς κρήναις	τῷ ἀγρῷ	τοῖς ἀγροῖς	τῷ παιδ-ί	τοῖς παι-σί(ν)
Acc. τὴν κρήνην	τὰς κρήνας	τὸν ἀγρόν	τοὺς ἀγρούς	τὸν παιδ-α	τοὺς παιδ-ας
Voc. ὦ κρήνη	ὦ κρήναι	ὦ ἀγρέ	ὦ ἀγροί		

Personal Pronouns

Nom.	ἐγώ	I	ἡμεῖς	we
Gen.	ἐμοῦ μου	my	ἡμῶν	our
Dat.	ἐμοί μοι	to me	ἡμῖν	to us
Acc.	ἐμέ	me	ἡμᾶς	us
Nom.	σύ	you	ὑμεῖς	you
Gen.	σοῦ σου	your	ὑμῶν	your
Dat.	σοί σοι	to you	ὑμῖν	to you
Acc.	σέ	you	ὑμᾶς	you
Nom.	αὐτός (himself)	αὐτή (herself)	αὐτό (itself)	
Gen.	αὐτοῦ his	αὐτῆς her	αὐτοῦ its	
Dat.	αὐτῷ to him	αὐτῇ to her	αὐτῷ to it	
Acc.	αὐτόν him	αὐτήν her	αὐτό it	
Nom.	αὐτοί (themselves)	αὐταί (themselves)	αὐτά (themselves)	
Gen.	αὐτῶν their	αὐτῶν their	αὐτῶν their	
Dat.	αὐτοῖς to them	αὐταῖς to them	αὐτοῖς to them	
Acc.	αὐτούς them	αὐτὰς them	αὐτά them	

Relative Pronoun – who, which, that

	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	οἷ	αἷ	ἃ
Gen.	οὗ	ῆς	οῦ	ῶν	ῶν	ῶν
Dat.	ᾧ	ῇ	ᾧ	οῖς	αῖς	οῖς
Acc.	ὃν	ῆν	ὃ	οὓς	ἄς	ἃ

Indefinite Relative Pronoun – whoever, anyone who; whatever, anything which

Nom.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅτι (ὅ τι)
Gen.	οὗτινος (οὗτου)	ῆστινος	οὗτινος (οὗτου)
Dat.	ὧτινι (ὅτῳ)	ῆτινι	ὧτινι (ὅτῳ)
Acc.	ὄντινα	ῆντινα	ὅτι (ὅ τι)
Nom.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
Gen.	ὧντινων (ὅτων)	ῶντινων	ὧντινων (ὅτων)
Dat.	οἷστισιν (ὅτοις)	αἷστισιν	οἷστισιν (ὅτοις)
Acc.	οὓστινας	ἄστινας	ἅτινα

Correlative Adverbs and their Frequencies in *Anabasis Book I*

Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative	Relative	Indefinite Relative
ΠΟΥ <i>where?</i>	ΠΟΥ <i>somewhere</i> <i>(I suppose)</i>	ἐνθάδε <i>here</i> ἐκεῖ ⁵ <i>there</i>	οὗ <i>where</i>	ὅπου <i>where(ver)</i>
ΠΟΤΙ <i>to where?</i>	ΠΟΙ <i>to somewhere</i>	δεῦρο <i>to here</i> ἐκείσε <i>to there</i>	οἷ <i>to where</i>	ὅποι <i>to where(ver)</i>
ΠΟΘΕΝ <i>from where?</i>	ΠΟΘΕΝ <i>from anywhere</i>	ἐνθένδε <i>from here</i> (ἐ)κεῖθεν <i>from there</i>	ὅθεν <i>from where</i>	ὅπόθεν <i>from where(ver)</i>
ΠΟΤΕ <i>when?</i>	ΠΟΤΕ <i>at some time</i> <i>ever, then</i>	τότε <i>at that time,</i> <i>then</i>	ὅτε <i>when</i> ὅταν	ὅποτε <i>when(ever)</i>
ΠΗ <i>which way?</i>	ΠΗ <i>some way</i>	τῇ τῇδε ταύτῃ <i>in this way</i>	ἣ <i>in which way</i>	ὅπῃ <i>in which way</i>
ΠΩΣ <i>how?</i>	ΠΩΣ <i>somehow</i>	ὥδε, οὕτως <i>thus, so</i> <i>in this way</i>	ὥς <i>how, as</i> ὥσπερ <i>as if, just as</i>	ὅπως <i>how(ever)</i> ὅπωςοῦν <i>howsoever</i>

Correlative Pronouns and their Frequencies in *Anabasis Book I*

Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative	Relative	Indefinite Relative
ΤΙΣ, ΤΙ <i>who, what?</i>	ΤΙΣ, ΤΙ <i>someone/thing</i> <i>anyone/thing</i>	ὁδε οὗτος <i>this</i> (ἐ)κεῖνος <i>there</i>	ὅς, ἡ, ὅ <i>who, which</i>	ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι <i>anyone who,</i> <i>whoever</i> ὅστις-οῦν <i>whosoever, what-</i>
ΠΟΤΕΡΟΣ <i>which of two?</i>	ΠΟΤΕΡΟΣ <i>one of two</i>	ἕτερος <i>one (of two)</i>	ὁπότερος <i>which of two</i>	ὁπότερος <i>whichever of two</i> ὁπότερος-οῦν ¹ <i>whichever of two</i>
ΠΟΣΟΣ <i>how much?</i>	ΠΟΣΟΣ <i>of some amount</i>	τοσόσδε <i>so much/many</i> τοσοῦτος ⁵ <i>so much/many</i>	ὅσος <i>as much/</i> <i>many as</i> ὅσοσπερ ¹	ὁπόσος <i>of whatever size/</i> <i>number</i>
ΠΟΙΟΣ <i>of what sort?</i>	ΠΟΙΟΣ <i>of some sort</i>	τοιοῦδε <i>such, this sort</i> τοιοῦτος <i>such</i>	οἷος <i>of which sort,</i> <i>such as, as</i> οἷοσπερ	ὁποῖος <i>of whatever sort</i>
ΠΗΛΙΚΟΣ <i>how old/large?</i>	ΠΗΛΙΚΟΣ <i>of some age,</i> <i>size</i>	τηλικόσδε τηλικούτος <i>of such an age,</i> <i>size</i>	ἡλικός <i>of which age,</i> <i>size</i>	ὁπηλικός <i>of whatever age/</i> <i>size</i>

λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην: loosen, ransom

	PRESENT		FUTURE		
	Active	Middle/Pass.	Active	Middle	Passive
Primary Indicative	λύω λύεις λύει λύομεν λύετε λύουσι(ν)	λύομαι λύε(σ)αι λύεται λύόμεθα λύεσθε λύονται	λύσω λύσεις λύσει λύσομεν λύσετε λύσουσι(ν)	λύσομαι λύσε(σ)αι λύσεται λύσόμεθα λύσεσθε λύσονται	λυθήσομαι λυθήσε(σ)αι λυθήσεται λυθησόμεθα λυθήσεσθε λυθήσονται
Secondary Indicative	ἔλουν ἔλυες ἔλυε(ν) ἐλύομεν ἐλύετε ἔλουν	ἐλύομην ἐλύε(σ)ο ἐλύετο ἐλύόμεθα ἐλύεσθε ἐλύοντο			
Subjunctive	λύω λύης λύῃ λύωμεν λύητε λύωσι(ν)	λύωμαι λύῃ λύηται λυώμεθα λύησθε λύωνται			
Optative	λύοιμι λύοις λύοι λύοιμεν λύοιτε λύοιεν	λυοίμην λύοιο λύοιτο λυοίμεθα λύοισθε λύοιντο	λύσοιμι λύσοις λύσοι λύσοιμεν λύσοιτε λύσοιεν	λυσοίμην λύσοιο λύοιτο λυσοίμεθα λύσοισθε λύσοιντο	λυθησοίμην λυθήσοιο λυθήοιτο λυθησοίμεθα λυθήσοισθε λυθησοιντο
Imp	λύε λύετε	λύε(σ)ο λύεσθε			
Pple	λύων, λύουσα, λύον	λυόμενος, λυομένη, λυόμενον	λύσων, λύσουσα, λύσον	λυσόμενος, λυσομένη, λυσόμενον	λυθησόμενος, λυθησομένη, λυθησόμενον
Inf.	λύειν	λύεσθαι	λύσειν	λύσεσθαι	λυθήσεσθαι

2nd sg. mid/pass -σ is often dropped except in pf. and plpf. tenses: ε(σ)αι → η,ει ε(σ)ο → ου

AORIST			PERFECT		
Active	Middle	Passive	Active	Middle/Passive	
			λέλυκα λέλυκας λέλυκε λελύκαμεν λέλύκατε λελύκασι(ν)	λέλυμαι λέλυσαι λέλυται λελύμεθα λελύσθε λελύνται	Primary Indicative
ἔλυσα ἔλυσας ἔλυε(ν) ἐλύσαμεν ἐλύσατε ἔλυσαν	ἐλυσάμην ἐλύσα(σ)ο ἐλύσατο ἐλυσάμεθα ἐλύσασθε ἐλύσαντο	ἐλύθην ἐλύθης ἐλύθη ἐλύθημεν ἐλύθητε ἐλύθησαν	ἐλέλυκη ἐλελύκης ἐλέλυκει ἐλελύκεμεν ἐλελύκετε ἐλελύκεσαν	ἐλέλυμην ἐλέλυσο ἐλέλυτο ἐλελύμεθα ἐλελύσθε ἐλέλυντο	Secondary Indicative
λύσω λύσης λύση λύσωμεν λύσητε λύσωσι(ν)	λυσώμαι λύση λύσηται λυσώμεθα λύσησθε λύσονται	λυθῶ λυθῆς λυθῇ λυθῶμεν λυθῆτε λυθῶσι(ν)	λελύκω λελύκης λελύκη λελύκωμεν λελύκητε λελύκωσι(ν)	λελυμένος ὦ —— ῆς —— ῇ —— ὶμεν —— ῆτε —— ὶσιν	Subjunctive
λύσαιμι λύσαις λύσαι λύσαιμεν λύσαιτε λύσαιεν	λυσαιμην λυσαιο λυσαιτο λυσαιμεθα λυσαισθε λυσαιντο	λυθείην λυθείης λυθείη λυθείμεν λυθείτε λυθείεν	λελύκοιμι λελύκοις λελύκοι λελύκοιμεν λελύκοιτε λελύκοιεν	λελυμένος εἶην —— εἶης —— εἶη —— εἶημεν —— εἶητε —— εἶησαν	Optative
λύσον λύσατε	λύσαι λύσασθε	λύθητι λύθητε		λέλυσο λέλυσθε	Imp
λύσᾳς, λύσᾳσα, λύσαν	λυσάμενος, λυσάμενη, λυσάμενον	λύθεις, λυθεῖσα, λυθέν	λελυκῶς, λελυκυῖα λελυκός	λελυμένος, λελυμένη λελυμένον	Pple
λύσαι	λύσασθαι	λυθῆναι	λελυκέναι	λελύσθαι	Inf.

Adapted from a handout by Dr. Helma Dik (<http://classics.uchicago.edu/faculty/dik/niftygreek>)

δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην: give

	Present	Imperfect	Aorist
Active	δίδωμι δίδομεν δίδως δίδοτε δίδωσιν διδόασιν	ἐδίδουν ἐδίδομεν ἐδίδους ἐδίδοτε ἐδίδου ἐδίδοσαν	ἔδωκα ἔδομεν ἔδωκας ἔδοτε ἔδωκεν ἔδοσαν
Imp	δίδου δίδοτε		δός δότε
Pple	διδούς, διδοῦσα, διδόν διδόντος, -ούσης, -όντος		δούς, δοῦσα, δόν δόντος, δούσης, δόντος
Inf.	διδόναι		δοῦναι, δόμεναι
Middle	δίδομαι διδόμεθα δίδοσαι δίδοσθε δίδονται δίδονται	ἐδιδόμην ἐδιδόμεθα ἐδίδοσο ἐδίδοσθε ἐδίδοτο ἐδίδοντο	ἐδόμην ἐδόμεθα ἔδου ἔδοσθε ἔδοτο ἔδοντο
Imp	δίδου δίδοσθε		δοῦ δόσθε
Pple	διδόμενος, η, ον		δόμενος, η, ον
Inf.	δίδοσθαι		δόσθαι

τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι, ἐτέθην: put, place; make

	Present	Imperfect	Aorist
Active	τίθημι τίθεμεν τίθης τίθετε τίθησιν τιθέασιν	ἐτίθην ἐτίθεμεν ἐτίθεις ἐτίθετε ἐτίθει ἐτίθεσαν	ἔθηκα ἔθεμεν ἔθηκας ἔθετε ἔθηκεν ἔθεσαν
Imp	τίθει τίθετε		θές θέτε
Pple	τιθείς, τιθεῖσα, τιθέν τιθέντος, -εῖσης, -έντος		θείς, θεῖσα, θέν θέντος, θεῖσα, θέντος
Inf.	τιθέναι		θεῖναι
Middle	τίθεμαι τιθέμεθα τίθεσαι τίθεσθε τίθεται τίθενται	ἐτιθέμην ἐτιθέμεθα ἐτίθεσο ἐτίθεσθε ἐτίθετο ἐτίθεντο	ἐθέμην ἐθέμεθα ἔθου ἔθεσθε ἔθετο ἔθεντο
Imp	τίθεσο τίθεσθε		θοῦ θέσθε
Pple	τιθέμενος, η, ον		θέμενος, η, ον
Inf.	τίθεσθαι		θέσθαι

ἵημι, ἵσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην: send, release, let go

	Present	Imperfect	Aorist
Active	ἵημι ἵεμεν ἵης ἵετε ἵησιν ἰᾶσι	ἵην ἵεμεν ἵεις ἵετε ἵει ἵεσαν	ἦκα εἵμεν ἦκας εἵτε ἦκεν εἶσαν
Imp	ἵει ἵετε		ἔς ἔτε
Pple	ἰείς, ἰεῖσα, ἰέν ἰέντος, ἰείσης, ἰέντος		εἶς, εἶσα, ἔν ἔντος, εἴσης, ἔντος
Inf.	ἰέναι, epic ἰέμεναι		εἶναι
Middle	ἵεμαι ἰέμεθα ἵεσαι ἵεσθε ἵεται ἰένται	ἰέμην ἰέμεθα ἵεσο ἵεσθε ἵετο ἰέντο	εἵμην εἵμεθα εἶσο εἶσθε εἶτο εἶντο
Imp	ἵεσο ἵεσθε		οὔ ἔσθε
Pple	ἰέμενος, η, ον		ἔμενος, η, ον
Inf.	ἵεσθαι		ἔσθαι

ἵστημι, στήσω, ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἑστάθην: stand, stop

	Present	1 st Aorist (transitive)	Aorist (intransitive)
Active	ἵστημι ἵσταμεν ἵστης ἵστατε ἵστησιν ἱσᾶσιν	ἕστησα ἑστήσαμεν ἕστησας ἑστήσατε ἕστησε ἕστησαν	ἕστην ἕστημεν ἕστης ἕστητε ἕστη ἕστ(ησ)αν
Imp	ἵστη ἵστατε	στήσον στήσατε	στήθι στήτε
Pple	ιστάς, ιστᾶσα, ιστάν ιστάντος, ιστᾶσα, ιστάντος	στήσας, ᾶσα, ἄν	στάς, στᾶσα, στάν στάντος, στάσης, στάντος
Inf.	ιστάναι	στήσαι	στήναι, στήμεναι
Middle	ἵσταμαι ἱστάμεθα ἵστασαι ἱστασθε ἵσταται ἱστανται		ἑστησάμην ἑστησάμεθα ἑστήσω ἑστήσασθε ἑστήσατο ἑστήσαντο
Imp	ἵτασο ἵτασθε		στήσαι στήσασθε
Pple	ιστάμενος, η, ον		στησάμενος, η, ον
Inf.	ἵτασθαι		στήσασθαι

οἶδα: to know (pf. with pres. sense)

	Perfect	Pluperfect	
Active	οἶδα ἴσμεν οἶσθα ἴστε οἶδε ἴσασι	ᾔδη ᾔσμεν ᾔδησθα ᾔστε ᾔδει ᾔσαν	
Imp	ἴσθι ἴστε		
Pple	εἰδώς, εἰδυῖα, εἰδός εἰδότος, εἰδυῖας, εἰδότος		
Inf.	εἰδέναι		
subj/opt	εἰδῶ εἰδῶμεν εἰδῆς εἰδῆτε εἰδῇ εἰδῶσι	εἰδείην εἰδείμεν εἰδείης εἰδείτε εἰδείη εἰδείεν	

εἰμί (to be)

	Present	Imperfect	
Active	εἰμί ἐσμέν εἶ ἐστέ ἐστίν εισίν	ἦ, ἦν ἦμεν ἦσθα ἦτε ἦν ἦσαν	
Imp	ἴσθι ἔστε		
Pple	ὢν, οὔσα, ὄν ὄντος, οὔσης, ὄντος		
Inf.	εἶναι		
subj/opt	ῶ ὦμεν ῆς ῆτε ῇ ὦσιν	εἶην εἶμεν εἶης εἶτε εἶη εἶεν	

εἶμι (to go; pres. indicate used as the fut. of ἔρχομαι)

	Present	Imperfect	
Active	εἶμι ἵμεν εἶ ἵτε εἶσι ἱᾶσιν	ἦα ἦμεν ἦεισθα ἦτε ἦειν ἦσαν	
Imp	ἵθι ἵτε		
Pple	ἰών, ἰούσα, ἰόν ἰόντος, ἰούσης, ἰόντος		
Inf.	ἰέναι		
subj/opt	ἴω ἴωμεν ἴης ἴητε ἴη ἴωσιν	ἴοιμι ἴοιμεν ἴοις ἴοιτε ἴοι ἴοιεν	

Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book IV: Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List

The following is an alphabetized list of all words that occur eight or more times in Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book IV. This list complements a running vocabulary list of the same words in the introduction. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author.

- ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good, brave, capable, 9
 ἄγω, ἄξω, ἡγαγον, ἦχα, ἡγμαι, ἡχθην: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 17
 ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην: to hear, listen to, 11
 ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost; heights, highpoints, 17
 ἀλλά: but, yet, 66
 ἀλλήλος, -α, -ον: one another, 15
 ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 8
 ἅμα: at the same time; as soon as, at, along with (+ dat.), 8
 ἀμφί: on both sides, 14
 ἄν: modal adv., 25
 ἀν-ίστημι, -στήσω, -έστησα, -έστηκα, -έσταμαι,,,: to make stand up, raise; rise, 10
 ἀνα-βαίνω, -βήσομαι, -έβην, -βέβηκα: to go up, climb, mount, 10
 ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man, 16
 ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: human being, person, 18
 ἄνω: up, above, 12
 ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 15
 ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 14
 ἀπο-θνήσκω, ἀποθανούμαι, ἀπέθανον, τέθνηκα,,,: to die off, perish, 9
 ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἦρξα, ἦρχα, ἦργμαι, ἦρχθην: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
 αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 8
 αὐτός, -ή, -ό: -self; he, she, it; the same, 110
 ἀπ-ικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, —, ἀφίγμαι, —: to come, arrive, 14
 βασιλεύς, ὁ: a king, chief, 10
 βούλομαι, βουλήσομαι,,, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην: to wish, be willing, desire, 13
 βοῦς, ὁ, ἡ: ox, bull, cow; cattle, 9
 γάρ: for, since, 55
 γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα: to come to be, become, be born, 48
 δέ: but, and, on the other hand, 377
 δεῖ: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 13
 δή: indeed, surely, really, certainly, just, 34
 διά: through (+gen) on account of (+ acc), 34
 δια-βαίνω, -βήσομαι, -έβην, -βέβηκα: to walk or pass over; cross 27
 δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην: to give, offer, grant, provide, 12
 δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι: to seem (good), think, imagine, 34
 δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι,,, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην: to be able, can, be capable, 25
 δύο: two, 8
 ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, her-, it-, thems-, 15

ἐγώ: I, 14

ἐθέλω (θέλω), ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα: to be willing, wish, desire, 8

εἰ: if, whether, 37

εἶδον: aor. of ὁράω

εἶμι: to be, exist, 200

εἶπον: aor. of λέγω

εἰς (ἐς): into, to, in regard to (+ acc.), 48

εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 8

ἐκ, ἐξ: out of, from (+ gen.), 30

ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 13

ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 10

Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνας, ὁ: Greek, 37

ἐν: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 70

ἐνθα: here, there, where, 20

ἐνθεν: from there, on one side; from where, 8

ἐνταῦθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 28

ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 18

ἐπεί: when, after, since, because, 41

ἐπειδή: when, since, after, 15

ἐπί: near (gen.), to, toward (acc.); near, at, 49

ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: necessities; provisions, 18

ἔπομαι, ἔψομαι, ἐσπόμεν: to follow, accompany, escort, 9

ἔρχομαι, εἶμι, ἦλθον, ἔλθω: to come or go, 23

ἑρωτάω, ἑρωτήσω, ἑρώμεν: to ask, inquire, question, 11

εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once 16

ἔχω, ἔξω, ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα: have, possess; be able; be disposed, 64

ἢ: or (either...or); than, 27

ἡγεμών, ὁ: leader, commander, guide, 15

ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγήσάμεν, ἡγήμεναι, ἡγήθημεν: to lead; consider, believe (dat) 12

ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 8

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 36

ἥν: if ever, ἔάν, 10

θέω: to run, 14

ἵππεύς, ὁ: a horseman, cavalry, 10

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, 11

καίω: to kindle, light, 10

καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 18

Καρδοῦχοι, οἱ: Carduchians, 17

κατά: according to, over (acc); down, against (gen), 25

καταβαίνω, -βήσομαι, -έβην, -βέβηκα: to step, come down, 9

καταλαμβάνω, -λήψομαι, -έλαβον, -ελήφθην: to seize, lay hold of, find, 16

καταλείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 8

κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην: to bid, order, command, 13

κλέπτω, κλέψω, ἔκλεψα: to steal; do or seize secretly, 9

κωλύω, κωλύσω, ἐκώλυσα: to hinder or prevent, 14

- κώμ-αρχος, ὁ: leader of a town, 11
 κώμη, ἡ: town, country town, 27
 λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον,,, ἐλήφθην: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 35
 λέγω, λέξω (ἑρέω), ἔλεξα (εἶπον), εἶλοχα, ἐλέγην: to say, speak; gather, 39
 λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 12
 λόφος, ὁ: hill, 9
 λοχαγός, ὁ: captain, 17
 λόχος, ὁ: ambush; company, unit of men, 20
 μάχομαι, μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην: to fight, contend, quarrel, dispute 10
 μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 8
 μέν: on the one hand, 94
 μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα: to stay, remain, 14
 μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 12
 νύξ, νυκτος, ἡ: a night, 18
 Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, ὁ: Xenophon, 50
 ὁ, ἡ, τό: the, 1135
 ὁδός, ἡ: road, way, path, journey, 26
 οἰκία, ἡ: house, dwelling, building, 12
 ὀλίγος -η, -ον: few, little, small, 10
 ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: resembling, similar to (dat) 21
 ὀπίσθεν: (from) behind; in the future; (+ gen.), 9
 ὀπισθο-φύλαξ, -ακος, ὁ: rear-guard, 19
 ὀπλίτης, -ου ὁ: hoplite, armed soldier, 11
 ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement; arms, 10
 ὅποτε: when, by what time, 9
 ὅπως: how, in what way; so that, 14
 ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον, ἐώρακα, ὥφθην: to see, look, behold, 50
 ὄρθιος, -α, -ον: steep, straight up, sheer, 13
 ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill, 39
 ὅς, ἧ, ὅ: who, which, that, 63
 ὅσος, -η, -ον: as many as; all who or which 21
 ὅτι: that; because, 38
 οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ: not, 57
 οὐδέ: and not, but not, nor, not even, 13
 οὐδ-εἰς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν: no one, nothing, 22
 οὕν: and so, then; at all events, 18
 οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this, these, 121
 οὕτως: in this way, thus, so, 14
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 9
 πάλιν: again, once more; back, backwards, 12
 παρασάγγης, ὁ: parasang (5.7 or 5.3 km), 15
 παρ-έρχομαι, -εἰμι, -ηλθον, -εληλυθα: to go past, pass, enter, 13
 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 28
 πεδῖον, τό: plain, 12
 πελταστής, ὁ: light troop (with light shield) 11

- περί: around, about, concerning, 7
πέτρα, ἡ: a rock, a ledge, 9
πλείων, -οντος: more, greater, 9
ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποιήθην: to do, make, create, 29
πολέμιος, -α, -ον: hostile; *subst.* enemy, 54
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: much, many, 71
πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, ἐπορευσάμην,, ἐπορεύθην: to travel, journey, march, 62
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 35
πρίν: until, before, 9
πρός: to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.), 51
προσ-έρχομαι, -εἰμι, -ἤλθον, -ἐληλυθα: to come or go to, approach, 10
πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 14
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 10
στάδιον, τό: a stade. (pl. at times στάδιοι), 9
σταθμός, ὁ: stage (~5 parasangs, distance covered in one day's journey), 16
στενός, -ή, -όν: narrow, 8
στράτευμα, τό: army, expedition, 19
στρατηγός, ὁ: general, 20
στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ: soldier, 16
στρατόπεδον τό: camp, encampment; army 8
σύ: you, 15
σύν: along with, with, together (+ gen.), 15
ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 11
τις, τι: anyone, anything, someone, something, 45
τίς, τί: who? which?, 36
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 11
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 10
ὑπό: by, because of, from (gen) under (dat) 13
ὑπο-ζύγιον, τό: a yoke-animal, ox, 18
φάλαξ, φάλαγγος, ὁ: phalanx, 11
φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 8
φέρω, οἶσω, ἤνεγκον, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἐνέχθην: to carry, bring, convey; fly, 9
φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα,,: to flee, escape; defend in court, 17
φημί, φήσω, ἔφησα, (εἶρηκα, εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθην): to say, claim, assert, 28
Χειρίσοφος, ὁ: Cheirisophus, 45
χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow, 18
χώρα, ἡ: land, region, country, 12
χωρίον, τό: place, spot, region, 20
ὥς: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 59
ὥσπερ: as, just as, as if, 9
ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 14